The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique. which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.


Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
Covers damaged/
Ceuverture èndommagée


Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculéeCover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque


Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleurColoured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distortion le long de la marge intérieure

Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
II se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutees lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-dtre uniques dupoint de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqubs ci-dessous.


Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur


Pages damaged/
Pages endommages
Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
Pages detached/
Pages détachées


Showthrough/
Transparence
Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression


Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible


Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure. etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.


Zoritish Rssociation for the Rovancement of Science.

NEWCASTLE-UPON-TYNE ' MEETING, 1889.

## FIFTH REPORT OF THE COMMITTEE

APPOINTRD 'FOR TER PURPOAE OF

INVESTIGATING AND PUBLISHING REPOBTS on the

- PHYSICAL CHARACTERS, LANGUAGES, AND

INDUSTRIAL AND SOCIAL CONDITION
or the
NORTH-WESTERN TRIBES OF THE DOMINION OF CANADA. E [PLATES I.-VI.] - ffices of the ctssociation :

22 ALBEMABLE. STREET, LONDON, W.


# Brifish Association for the Rdvancement of Science. 

Fifth Report of the Committee, consisting of Dr. E. B. Tylor, Dr. G. M. Dawison, General Sir J. H. Lefroy, Dr. Daniel Wilson, Mr. R. G. Haliburton, and Mr. George W. Bloxam (Secretary), appointed for the purpose of investigating and publishing reports on the physical characters, languages, and industrial and social condition of the North-Western Tribes of the Dominion of Canada.
[PLATES I.-VI.]
Remarks on North Americañ Ethnology : Introductory to the Report on the Indians of British Columbia. By Horatio Hale.-

The Province of British Columbia offers probably the best field of ethnological research now to be found in North America. This distinction is due to two circumstances, each of much importance. The one is the fact that the tribes of this Province have thas far suffered less displacement and change from foreign influences than those of any other region. They still for the most part occapy their original seats, and they retain to a large extent their primitive castoms and beliefs. The other circumstance, and one of special scientific interest, is the great number of linguistic stocks, or families of languages, which are found in the Province. There are, as will appear from the report and. map, no less than eight of these stocks, being twice as many as now exist in the whole of Enrope.

The importance of this fact will be appreciated if we bear in mind that in America the linguistic stock is the universally accepted nuit of ethnological classification. It is not that the physical distinctions which have elsewhere been proposed as the basis of classifications are lacking on this continent. On the contrary, they are markedly apparent. In colour the difference is great between the fair-skinned Haidas and Tsimshians of the northern coasts and islands, and the swarthy, almost black, natives of Soathern California. Even more notable is the difference between the 3hort, squat, broad-faced, and coarse-featared members of the coast tribes of Oregon and British Columbia, and the tall, slender, oval-visaged Indians of the interior. The striking differences of cranial measurement re shown in Sir Daniel Wilson's work on 'Prehistoric Man.' Hair varying from coarse, straight, and black to fine, brown, and carly; eyes with orizontal and eyes with ablique openings; noses in some tribes aquiline, ind in others depressed, show varieties as great as those of colour, stature, nd cranial ontlines. These and other physical distinctions, however, are not been accepted by any scientific inquirer in America of late ears as grounds of classification of the native tribes, for the simple Section H .
reason that they are manifestly due to climatic or other local or casual influences, and cannot be held to indicate any difference of race.

But the distirction of linguistic stocks is radical and profound: The differences which it indicates extend far beyond largaage, and are displayed in the whole nature and cbaracter of the speakers of each language. This fact became apparent to me many years ago, in making for the U.S. Government an ethnographical survey of Oregon and of a part of British Columbia. ${ }^{1}$ Its existence perplexed me at the time, as it has since perplexed other investigators; and the question of the origin of so many linguistic stocks, or languages radically and totally distinct, found ip so limited a district, has appeared to present a problem of the highest scientific interest. ${ }^{2}$

In an address delivered before the American Association for the Advancement of Science in 1886, and published in their volume of 'Proceedings' for that year, I ventured to propose an explaration of the origin, not only of these American languages, but of all stock languages whatsoever, except, of course, the primitive language (whatever it may have been) which was spoken by the first commanity of the haman species. A succinct bat clear outline of this theory was given by Professor Sayce in his Presidential Address at the Manchester meeting in 1887. While pointing out what he considered the merits of the theory, Mr. Say.ce asked, very reasonably, for more evidence to sustain it than I had been able to include in my brief essay. This evidence I have endeavoured to give in a paper read last year before the Canadian Institute of Toronto, and published in the 'Proceedings' of that society for 1888-89.

With Professor Sayce's address in the hands of the members of the Association, I need only say, briefly, that the theory supposes these isolated idioms to have had their origin in the natural language-making faculty of young children. Many instances of langaages thas spontaneously created by children were given; and in my Toronto paper evidence was produced to show that the words and grammar of such languages might, and probably would in many cases, be totally different from those of the parental speech. The fact was pointed out that in the first peopling of every conntry, when, from various causes, families must often be scattered at very wide distances from one another, many cases must have occurred

[^0]where two or more young children of different sexes, left by the death of their parents to grow ap secluded from all other society, were thas compelled to frame a language of their own, which would become the mothertongue of a new linguistic stock. This result, it is clear, would only follow in those regions where, from the mildness of the climate and the spontaneous fruitfulness of the soil, young children woald be able to find subsistence for themselves through all seasons of the year.

It is evident that, along with their new language, these children and their descendants would have to frame a new religion, a new social policy, and, in general, new customs and arts, except so far as reminiscences of the parental example and teachings might direct or modify the latter. All these conclusions accord precisely with the results of ethnological investigations in America.

It should, however, be borne in mind that, whether the theory which I thas proposed is accepted or not, the fact will still remain that the existence of a linguistic stock involves the absolnte certainty that the tribe speaking such a form of langaage, differing entirely from all other tongues, must have lived for a very long period wholly isolated from all other commonities; otherwise this idiom would not have had time to be formed and to become the speech of a tribe sufficiently numerous and strong to maintain its independence. In this long isolation (however it might arise) the tribe would necessarily acquire by continual intermarriage a peculiar mental character, common to the whole tribe, and with it the modes of thought and the social institutions which are the necessary outcome of such a character. Thus the linguistic stock, whatever its origin, must naturally and necessarily be, as has been said, the proper ethnological unit of classification.

The experience of the able philologists of the American Barean of Ethnology entirely confirms these views Special attention, of conrse, has been given by them to the investigation of the stocks in North America. Mr. J. C. Pilling, of the Burean, the anthor of the valuable series of bibliographies of American linguistic stocks now in coarse of publication, informs me that the namber of these stocks in North America (north of Mexico), so far as at present determined, is fifty-eight-a greater number, perbaps, than can be found in the whole eastern hemisphere, apart from Central Africa. Of this number no less than thirty-nine are comprised in the narrow strip of territory west of the Rocky Mountains, which extends from Alaska to Lower California. Why a great number of stocks might naturally be looked for along this coast, with its mild and equable climate, and its shores and valleys abounding in shell-fish, berries, and edible roots, is fally explained in my essays already referred to.

From what has been said it follows that in our stadies of communities in the earliest stage, we must look, not for sameness, bat for almost endless diversity, alike in languages and in social organisations. Instead of one ' primitive human horde' we must think of some two or three handred primitive societies, each beginning in a single household, and expanding gradually to a people distinct from every other, alike in speech, in character, in mythology, in form of government, and in social usages. The language may be monosyllabic, like the Khasi and the Othomi ; or agglatinative in various methods, like the Mantsha, the Nahuatl, the Eskimo, and the Iroqnoian; or inflected, like the Semitic and the Sabaptin. Its forms may be simple, as in the Maya and the Haida, or complex, as in the Aryan, the Basque, the Algonkin, and the Tinneh. The old theo-
retical notion, that the more complex and inflected idioms hare grown out of the simpler agglutinative or monosyllabic forms, must be given up as inconsistent with the results of modern researches.

In like inanner, we find among primitive commanities every form of government and of social institutions-monarchy among the Mayas and the Natchez, aristocracy among the Jroquois and the Kwakintl, democracy among the Algonkins and the Shoshonees, descending almost to pare, though perhaps peaceful, anarchy among the Tinneh, the Eskimo, and various other families. In some stocks we find patriarchal (or 'paternal') institutions, as among the Salish and the Algonkin; in others, matriarchal (or ' maternal'), as among the Iroquoian and the Haida. In some the clañ system exists; in others it is unknown. In some exogamy prevails, in others endogamy. In some, women are honoured and hare great influence and privileges; in others, they are despised and ill-treated. In some, wives are obtained by capture, in others by courtship, in others by the agreement of the parents. All these varions institations and usages exist among tribes in the same stage of culture, and all of them appear to be equally primitive. They are simply the forms in which each community, by force of the character of its people, tends to crystallise.

We frequently, frowever, find evidence, if not of internal derelopment, at least of derivation. Institutions, creeds, and castoms are in many cases adopted by one stock from another. As there are now 'loan-words' in all languages, so there are borrowed beliefs, borrowed laws, and borrowed arts and usages. Then, also, there are many mixed commanities, in which, through the effect of conquest or of intermarriages, the physical traits, languages, and institutions of two or more stocks have become variously combined and intermingled. In short, the study of human societies in the light of the classification by linguistic stocks is like the study of material substances in the light of their classification by the chemical elements. In each case we find an almost infinite variety of phenomena, some primitive and others secondary and composite, but all referable to a limited number of primary constituents: in chemistry, the material elements; in ethnology, the linguistic stocks. Such is the result of the latest investigations, as pursued on the Western Continent, where for the first time a great number of distinct communities, in the earliest social stages, have been exposed to scientific observation, with all their organisation and workings as clearly discernible as those of bees in a glass hive.

The researches of Dr. Boas, while pursued, as will be apparent, without any bias of preconceived theory, will throw mach valuable light on the subjects now referred to, as well as on others of equal importance. It should be added that some of the facts which he has gathered, particularly in regard to the tenure of land among the tribes of British Columbia, have a great practical value. This is a point which deserves special mention, as the Canadian Government is now sharing with the Association the expense of these inquiries. Many of the most costly wars which the Colonial Governments have had to wage with the aboriginal tribes in America, New Zealand, and elsewhere have arisen, as is well known, from misunderstandings growing out of the acquisition of land from the natives. The great benefit which accrued to New Zealand, in the improved relations between the natives and the colonists, from the researches of Sir George Grey into the laws, usages, and traditions of the Maori tribes, is a motton of hintam. Than. atotn of offine in Britiah

Columbia is in some respects-remarkably similar to that which prevailed in New Zealand. If the inquiries which have been instituted by the + Association shall have the effect of averting a very possible conflict of races, their atility will be very great-one might almost say incalculable. It may be well, therefore, to drav particular attention to some noteworthy facts set forth in Dr. Boas's report. We learn that the land occupied by certain tribes is held, not by the tribe, nor by individuals, but by the clan, or gens, which is consequently the only anthority able to dispose of it; and, further, that when the land is sold the original owners are still considered by the native law to retain ' the right of fishing, hanting, and gathering berries in their old home.' It is easy to see how, when these native laws and usages are not anderstood, collisions might at any time arise, in which each party would naturally claim to be in the right. It should, further, be borne in mind that as there are eight distinct stocks in the Province there may possibly be as many distinct systems of land tenure. At all events, it is certain that the tenure among the tribes-in which the clan system exists must differ in one important respect from that of the tribes in which it is unknown.

It is evident tinat, as Dr. Boas suggests, this branch of inquiry is one which deserves to be carefully prosecuted, both for its scientific interes and for the great practical benefit which may result from it.

## First General Report on the Indians of British Columbia. By Dr. Fraxz Boas.

## Introdectory Note.

The following report on the Indians of British Columbia embodies the general results of a reconnaissance made by the writer in the summer of 1888 ; under the anspices of the Committee of the British Association appointed for the purpose of collecting information respecting the NorthWestern Tribes of the Dominion of Canada, supplemented by observations made by the aathor on a previous trip in the winter of 1886-87. A preliminary report was pablished in the Fourth Report of the Committee. The present report contains the principal results of the author's investigations on the Tlingit, Haida, Tsimshian, and Kutonaqa (Kootanie). His limited time and the preparations for a new journey to British Columbia, undertaken under the auspices of the Committee, did not permit him to study, exhaustively the extensive osteological material collected on the previous journeys. For the same reason the linguistic material collected among the Nootka and Kwakintl is kept back. Besides this it seemed desirable to await the publication of the grammar of the latter language by the Rev. A. J. Hall in the 'Transactious of the Royal Society of Canada' before publishing the linguistic notes on the same stock, which are necessarily fragmentary when compared to a grammar drawn up by a student who has lived many years among the Indians speaking that language. The chapters on social organisation, customs, art, and knowledge are also necessarily incomplete. The difficalty of observing or even acquiring information on such points during a flying visit of a fortnight-the maximum time spent among any single tribeis so overwhelming that no thorongh report is possible, and it is almost impossible to guard against serions errors. On account of this difficulty the anthor has paid great attention to the collection of reports
on historićal events and of traditions. In these the peculiar customs and character of a people always appear very clearly; and the facts mentioned in these tales form a valuable starting-point for the observation of customs which would else remain unnoticed. Among tribes who have partly yielded to the influence of the contact with whites they afford a valuble clue to their former customs.

The chapter on 'Arts and Knowledge' has not been treated fully, as the general character of North-West American art is well known, and, in order to give a complete account of the conventionalism of the works of art of these tribes, an exhaustive study is necessary, which the writer has been'so far unable to undertake.

The author's researches do not include the Tinneh tribes, some of which are comparatively well known. The Salish languages are merely enumerated, as investigations on this interesting stock are being carried on, and the material in its present shape would require an early revision.

The present report is supplemented by the following papers by the author:-
'Zar Ethnologie von Britisch-Columbien.' Petermann's Mittheilungen, 1887. No 5, with map.
' Mittheilurgen über die Bilqûla Indianer.' Original Mittheilangen aus dem Maseam für Völkerkunde, Berlin, pp. 177-182, with two plates.
' Die Sprache der Bilqûla.' Verh, anthrop. Ges. Berlin', 1886, pp. 202-206.
'Censas and Reservations of the Kwakiutl.' Bull. Am. Geogr. Soc. Sept. 1887.
'On Certain Songs and Dances of the Kwakiutl.' Journ. Am. FolkLore, 1888, pp. 49-64.
'Chinook Songs.' Journ. Am. Folk-Lore, 1888, pp. 220-226.
'Die Tsimschian.' Ztschr. für Ethnologie, Berlin, 1888, pp. 231-247.
' The Houses of the Kwakintl Indians.' Proc. U.S. National Museam, 1888, pp. 197-213.
'Notes on the Snanaimnq.' Am. Anthropologist, Washington, 1889, jp. 321-328.
'The Indians of British Columbia:' Trans. Roy. Soc. of Canada, 1888, Sec. II. pp. 47-57.
' Die Mythologie der nordwestamerikanischen Küstenstämme.' Globas, Braunschweig, 1887-88.

The following alphabet has been used in the report:-
The vowels have their continental sounds, namely: $a$, as in father; $e$, like $a$ in mate ; $i$, as in machine; $o$, as in note; $u$, as in rule.

In addition the following are used: $\ddot{a}, \ddot{\partial}$, as in German ; $\hat{a}=a w$ in law ; $E=e$ in flower (Lepsins's e).

Among the consonants the following additional letters have been used : $g$, a very guttural $g$, similar to $g r ; k$, a very guttural $k$, similar to $k r ; q$, the German ch in bach; $\boldsymbol{H}$, the German ch in ich; $\mathbf{Q}$, between $q$ and $r$; $c=s h$ in shore; $\xi$, as th in thin; $t l$, an explosive $l$; $d l$, a palatal $l$, pronounced with the back of the tongue (dorso-apical).

## Character of the Countrt.

The north-west coast of America, from Juan de Fuca Strait to Cross Sound in Alaska, is characterised by its fiords, sounds, and islands, which make it very favourable for navigation in canoes and other small craft.

Among the most important of. these fiords is Portland Inlet, in the extreme north of the territory. Near its month Nass River empties itself, which is navigable for canoes for about 80 miles. Between the 55th and 54th degrees of latitude the coast is comparatively open. Here the Skeena River has its month. Farther sonth we find an extremely intricate network of fiords and channels, some of which penetrate far into the interior. Among these we may mention Gardner and Douglas Cbannels, Dean Inlet, and Bentinck Arm, and the straits and sounds separating Vancouver Island from the mainland. This region has a very temperate climate, the heat of summer and the cold of winter being moderated by the influence of the sea winds. This influence, however, does not extend far inland, and a few miles from the sea-coast low temperatures prevail in winter. While intercourse all along the coast is greatly facilitated by its character, it is almost impossible to penetrate into the interior, the high peaks rof the coast ranges rising abruptly from the sea. There are only a few passes by means of which intercourse is possible. The most important of these are on Skeena River, and on Salmon and Bella Coola Rivers of Dean Inlet and Bentinck Arm.

As the precipitation all along the coast is very great, its lower parts are covered with dense forests, which furnish wood for building honses and canoes. Among these, the pine, bemlock, and the red and yellow cedar are the most prominent; while the hard wood of the maple is used for implements of various kinds, principally for paddles. The woods abound with numerons kinds of berries, which are eagerly sought for by the Indians. They also make use of the kelp and seaweed with which the sea abounds.

In the woods the deer, the elk, the cariboo, the black and the grizzly bears, the wolf, and numerous other animals, are found. The monntain goat lives on the high mountain ranges. The beaver, the otter, and the fur-seal furnish valuable skins. The Indians keep a great number of dogs in their villages, which look almost exactly like the coyote. In the northern villages they are much like the Eskimo dog.

Of prime importance to the natives is the abundance of fish and other animals living in the sea. Seals, sea-lions, and whales are found in considerable numbers, bat the Indian depends almost entirely upon the various species of salmon and the olachen (Thaleichthys pacificus, Gir.), which are caught in enormous quantities in the rivers. Varions species of cod and halibat are canght throughout the year; herrings visit the côast early in spring; in short, there is such an abundance of animal life in the sea that the Indians live almost solely upon it. Besides fish, they gather several kinds of shell-fish, sea-eggs, and cattle-fish.

The interior of the Province is throughont mountainons, with the exception of a portion of the territory occupied by the Tinneh. The country east of the coast ranges is comparatively dry, hot in summer and cold in winter. The southern parts of this region are desolate, the rivers cutting deep gorges through the valleys, which are filled with drift. Agriculture can be carried on only by means of irrigation, bat the country is well adapted to stock-raising. Salmon ascend the rivers, and the lakes are well stocked with fish, which forms the staple food of the tribes west of the Selkirk Range. . Between this range and the Rocky Monntains the wide valley of the Columbia and Kootenay Rivers extends from the International Bonndary to near the great bend of the Columbia. The Indians of this valley have access to the great plains over a number of passes.

## Inhabitants.

The country is inhabited by a great number of tribes belonging to seven or eight linguistic stocks. Certain similarities of form and phonetic elements between the Tlingit and Haida languages have given rise to the opinion that farther researches may show them to be remote branches of the same stock. This presumption might appear to be strengthened by their divergence from all other stocks inhabiting the territory. Nevertheless the dissimilarity of vocabularies and of grammatical elements is so great that the coincidences referred to cannot yet be considered sufficient proof of their common origin, although the two languages must be classed together in one group when compared with the other languages of the North Pacific coast. Counting them for the present as separate stocks, we distinguish the following families :-

1. Tlingit.-Inhabiting Southern Alaska.
2. Haida.-Inhabiting Queen Charlotte Islands and part of Prince of Wales Archipelago.
3. Tsimshian.-Inhabiting Nass and Skeena Rivers and the adjacent islands.
4. Kwakiatl.-Inhabiting the coast from Gardiner Channel to Cape Mudge, with the sole exceptions of the country around Dean Inlet and the west coast of Vancouver Island.
5. The Nootka.-Inhabiting the west coast of Vancouver Island. ${ }^{1}$
6. The Salish.-Inhabiting the coast and the eastern part of Vanconver Island south of Cape Mudge, the southern part of the interior as far as the crest of the Selkirk Range and the northern parts of Washington, Idaho, and Montana.
7. The Kutonāqa.-Inhabiting the valley of the Upper Columbia River, Kootenay Lake and River, and the adjoining parts of the United States.

The Tlingit, although not belonging properly to British Columbia, have been included in this report, as they must be considered in a stady of the Haida and Tsimshian.

I do not enamerate the tribes composing the Tlingit and Haida peoples, as the former have been treated by Dr. A. Kranse in his excellent work, 'Die Tlinkit Indianer,' while I am not acquainted with the subdivisions of the latter. Dr. G. M. Dawson in his ' Report on the Qaeen Charlotte Islands' gives a list of villages. It seems that the Haida divide their people into several groups, each group comprising a number of villages. The Haida call themselves Qā'eda, i.e. people. They are called by the Tlingit Dēkyinō', i.e. people of 'the sea. The Tsimshian call them Haida, which is evidently derived from Qa'eda.

The following list of Tsimshian tribes was obtained by inquiries at the month of Skeena River.

The language is spoken in two principal dialects, the Nasqa' and the Tsimshian proper.
I. Tribes speaking the Nasqa' dialect :

1. Nasqa', on Nass River.
2. Gyitksa'n, on the apper Skeena River=people of the Ksia'n.

[^1]II. Tribes speaking the Tsimshian proper:

1. Ts'Emsia'n, on the month of Skeena River=on the Ksia'n.
2. Gyits'umrä'lon, below the cañon of Skeena River=people on the upper part of the river.
3. Gyits'ala'ser, at the cañon of Skeena River=cañon people.
4. Gyitqā'tla, on the islands off the mouth of Skeena River= people of the sea.
5. Gyitg $\bar{a}^{\prime}$ 'ata, on the shores of Grenville Channel=people of the poles, so called on account of their salmon weirs.
6. Gyidesdzo', north-west of Milbank Sound.

Some of these tribes are subdivided into septs, each of which inhabits one rillage (see ' $Z$ tschr. für Ethnologie,' 1888, p. 232).

The Tsimshian are called by the Tlingit Ts'ôtsQe'n; by the HēiltsukKwétela; by the Bilqula, Elqi'mir ; while the Haida designate each tribe by its proper name.

The whole people is divided into forr clans: the raven, called $\mathrm{K} \cdot \mathrm{an}-$ ha'da ; the eagle, called Laqski'yek; the wolf, called Laqkyebö'; and the lear, called Gyispōtuwe'da. Details on this sabject will be found in the chapter on social organisation.
4. The Kwakintl.-So far as I am aware, the language is spoken in three dialects, the people speaking them not being wholly unintelligible to each other: the Qāisla', the Heiltsuk', and the Kwakiatl proper. The Qäisla' is spoken north of Grenville Channel ; the Héiltsuk• embraces the tribes from Grenville Channel to Rirers Inlet; the Kwakiatl proper is spoken from Rivers Inlet to the central part of Vancouver Island. I do not enter into an enumeration of the many tribes of this group, one list having been published by Dr. George M. Dawson in the 'Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada,' 1887, another, accompanicd by a detailed map by the writer, in Petermann's 'Mittheilungen,' 1887.

The most northern tribe of this group, the Qäisla', are called Gyit'ama't by the Tsimshian; the Ggimanoitq of Gardner Cbannel are called Gyitio'p by the same people. The Hēiltsuk- proper are called Watsta' by the Tsimshian, elk $\cdot \mathrm{la}$ 'sumf by the Bilqula.
5. Nootka.-Regarding their tribal divisions I would refer to Sproat's 'Scenes and Studies of Savage Life.' The Pe'ntlate call the Nootka Çile'itc, but as a rule this name is used for the tribes of Alberni Channel only. The Çatlö'ltq call these tribes $\bar{O}^{\prime}$ menē, the $\mathrm{Sk} \cdot \mathrm{q}^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}$ mic call them Tc'Ecā'atq. (Detailed information on the tribes of this stock will be given in the report for 1890.)
6. The Salish.-This important stock, which inhabits a large part of British Columbia and the adjacent territories of the United States, is represented by two groups of tribes on the coast of the province:-
A. The Bilquala of Dean Inlet and Bentinck Arm, comprising four tribes.
B. The Coast Salish.-I comprise in this group the numerous dialects of the Salish stock that are spoken on the coasts of the Gulf of Georgia end of Paget Sound. The difference between these tribes and those of he interior, in regard to their mode of life and language, is so marked that we may be allowed to class them in one large group. H. Hale and 1. Gallatin first pointed out their affinities to the Salish proper. A numer of tribes of Paget Sound are included under the name of Niskwalli more properly, Nsk•oa'li), but it seems to me that the subdivisions of the
latter are not perfectly known. The Niskwalli would properly form one of the larger divisions of the Coast Salish. The latter is spoken in the following dialects in British Columbia:-

1. Çatlō'ltq, in Discovery Passage, Valdes Island, Bate and Malaspina Inlets. The Çatlo'ltq are called $K \cdot \bar{o}^{\prime}$ moks by the Lé'kwiltok'.
2. Si'ciatl, in Jervis Inlet. Called Si'cätl by the Snanaimaq, Ni'ciatl by the Çatlóltq.
3. P• E'ntlatc, from Comox to Qualekum.
4. Sk•qō'mic, on Howe Sound and Burrard Inlet. Called Sk'qoā'mic by the Catlō'ltq.
5. K•an'itcin, from Nonoos Bay to Sanitch Inlet, and on Fraser River as far as Spazzum.
6. Lku'ngen, on the south-eastern part of Vancouver Island. Called Lkū'men by the K•an'itcin.

Similar to their language is the Tla'lem of the sonth coast of Juan de Fuca Strait; the S'ämic, which is spoken east of San Juan Island; the Semiā́mō of Semiamo Bay, and the qtlumi (Lummi).
C. Ntlakya'pamuq, from Spuzzum to Asherroft.
D. Stla'tlinmH, on Douglas and Lilloet Lakes.
E. Squa'pamuq, from Kamloops and Shushwap Lakes to Quesnelle. Called Tlitk atewu'mtlat by the Kutona'qa (= without shirts and trousers).
F. Okinä́k'ēn, on Okanagan and Arrow Lakes. Called Tcitouànt by the Ntlakya'pamuq; Kānk'ntlā'atlam ( = flatheads) by the Kutona'qa.
7. The Kutona'qa (Kootenay), inhabiting the valley of the Kootenay and Columbia Rivers. The language is spoken in two slightly differing dialects, the upper and lower Kootenay.
I. Upper Kootenay, on the Columbia Lakes and apper Kootenay River.
(1) Aqkisk ${ }^{2} \overline{u n}^{\prime}$ kenik, $=$ tribes of the (Columbia) lakes.
(2) Aqk'a'mnik, at Fort Steele.
(3) Aqk'anequ'nik ( = river Indians), Tobacco Plains.
(4) Aqkīyénik, Lake Pend d'Oreille.
II. Lower Kootenay.

Aquqtiā'tlqō, Aquqenn'kqō; Kootenay Lake.
The Kutona'qa call the Blackfeet Sahā'ntla = bad Indians; the Cree, Gutskian'm = liars; the Sioux, Katsk'agi'tlsāk = charcoal legs.

The census retarns of the Indian Department give the following num. bers for the various peoples. The Tlingit are not included in this list, as they do not live in British territory.

|  | 1883 | 1884 | 1885 | 1886 | 1887 | 1858 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Haida, Kaigani excepted (estimated) | - | - | - | - | - | 2,500 |
| Tsimshian (estimated) . | - | - | - | - | - | 5,000 |
| Bilqula and Hēiltsuk- (estimated) | - | - | - | - | - | 2,500 |
| Nootka | 3,612 | 3,437 | 3,445 | 3,415 | 3,361 | 3,160 |
| Kwakiutl and Lēkwiltok• | 2,264 | 1,889 | 1.969 | 1,969 | 1,936 | 1,898 |
| Coast Salish . . | 2, | 6,605 | 6,874 | 7,080 | 6,724 | 6,838 |
| Ntlakyapamuq, Stla'tliumH, and SQua'pamuq | 5,791 | 5,470 | 4,740 | 4,649 | 4,655 | 4,497 |
| Okinā'k•ē : . . . | 1,188 | 1,188 | 1,020 | 1,004 | 956 | 942 |
| Kutona'qa . . . | - | - | . | - | 568 | 587 |

These figures show that the census is approximate only. The inland
tribes appear to be decreasing in numbers, while the coast tribes appear to be almost stationary. The above list gives a total of about 27,900. To these must be added 1,500 Tinneh and 8,522 'bands not visited,' whoerer these may be.

The Indians of the interior have almost entirely given up their ancient customs. They are mostly Roman Catholics, but there are a few Protestants. Of course a considerable amount of paganism is still larking under the Christianism of these natives. They are good stock-raisers, and endeavour to irrigate their lands; bat it seems that the majority are poor. The lower Kutona'qa still adhere, to a great extent, to their ancient customs. They are principally fishermen. All the Salish tribes catch a considerable amount of fish, while the upper Kutona'qa were originally hanters.

The coast Indians are well off up to this day. While the efforts of missionaries among the Haida have so far not been very successful, the Tsimshian proper have become Christianised. They have given up all their old customs except those referring to their social organisation. The gentes are still acknowledged, and the laws referring to the matual sapport among members of one gens and to the work to be done by the father's gens at certain occasions (see p. 41) are still in force. The final giving up of castoms seems to be done by the council, not by the individuals. The Héiltsuk have been Protestants for many years, while the Bilqula are still uninfluenced by contact with missionaries. The same is true, to a large extent, among the Kwakintl, only a few individuals of the Nimkic tribe adhering to the Episcopalian Church. The Coast Salish belong in part to the Roman Catholic Church; but notwithstanding their allegations paganism still prevails to a great extent. In the report of the Department of Indian Affairs almost all of them are enumerated as Roman Catholics, even the pagan tribes of Comox, Victoria, åd Nanaimo, where their old customs are still rigidly adhered to. Among the Nootka the Roman Catholics have gained considerable influence.

In my preliminary report I have dwelt upon the present state of these Indians, the canses of their discontent, and the incapacity of white settlers to understand the peculiar culture of the Indian. The establishment of industrial schools, which is now taken up energetically, is a great step forward, and will help the Indians to reach independence and to retain or regain self-esteen, one of the foundations of progress. I will not repeat the statements made and the views expressed last year. It is to be hoped that by a considerate land policy, by the encouragement of industries rather than of agriculture, and by an attempt to develop existing institations instead of destroying them the Indians will in course of time become useful men and good citizens.

## Physical Character.

The physical characteristics of the coast tribes are very uniform. This is undoubtedly due to the frequent intermarriages between the varions tribes, which have had also a distinct effect upon the varions languages, some of which have borrowed great numbers of words from the languages spoken by neighbouring tribes. I shall refer to this fact later on. The habitus of the northern tribes of this region is similar to that of East Asiatic tribes-a fact which was observed by R. Virchow, who examined a number of Bilqula who visited Berlin in the winter of

1885-86. This similarity is very marked among the Tlingit, Haida, Tsimshian, Kwakiutl and Bilqula, to a less extent among the Nootka, while the Coast Salish and the Salish of the interior show a different type. As the Bilqua speak a language belonging to the Salish family, it must be assumed that they acquired their distinct physical character through intermixture with the neighbouring tribes.

Many tribes of this region are in the habit of deforming the heads of their children. I noticed three different methods of deformation. The tribes of the northern part of Vancouver Island ase circular bandages by means of which the occiput acquires an extraordinary length. Excessively deformed heads of this kind are found on the northern part of the west coast of Vancouver Island among the K•oski'mō. Farther south a strong pressure is exerted upon the occiput, a bandage is laid aronnd the head immediately behind the coronal suture, and a soft cushion is used for pressing down the forehead. The Flatheads proper compress forehead and occiput by means of boards or hard cashions. It seems that the Tlingit, Haida, and Tsimshian never practised the custom of head-flattening. It is unfortunate that no observations on the Tsimshian of the apper Skeena River exist. Those at the month of the river have frequently intermarried with the Tlingit, Haida, and Heiitsnk:.

Among the Tlingit, Haida, Tsimshian and Hēiltsuk- the custom prevails of perforating the lower lips of the females. In these perforations, which are enlarged with increasing age, labrets are worn, which are in some instances as long as 40 mm . and as wide as 20 mm . The men of all the coast tribes have the septum perforated, the operation being performed in early childhood. Earrings are worn either in a series of perforations of the helix or in the lobe of the ear.

Chiefs' daughters, among the Tsimshian, have the incisors ground down to the gams by chewing a pebble of jade, the row of teeth thus assuming an arched form.

Among the Nootka scars may frequently be seen running at regular intervals from the shoulder down the breast to the belly, and in the same way down the legs and arms. Tattooings are fonnd on arms, breast, back, legs, and feet among the Haida; on arms and feet among the Tsimshian, Kwakiutl, and Bilqula; on breast and arms among the Nootke; on the jaw among the Coast Salish women.

Members of tribes practising the Hamats'a ceremonies (see p. 55) show remarkable scars produced by biting. At certain festivals it is the duty of the Hamats'a to bite a piece of flesh out of the arms, leg, or breast of a man.

The women of the Kwakiutl tribes wear very tight anklets, which prevent free circulation between feet and legs. These anklets leave lasting impressions.

Before describing the general features of these tribes I give a table of measurements. Unfortanately I was not in possession of a glissière, and therefore no great weight. is attribated to the measures, which ought to be made with that instrument. A T-square, to which a movable arm was attached, was used as a substitute. The seven individuals, all male, were measured in the jail at Victoria, kind permission having been given by Major Grant. I did not consider it advisable to make anthropometrical measurements in the villages of the natives, as I feared to rouse their distrust, and had nowhere time to become well acquainted with them. It
is almost impossible to use profitably a very short time for both anthropometrical and ethnological collections.

The following individuals were measured:-
Haida: 1. Gētgalgā'o (Samuel), 25 years old; raven gens; native of Coal Harbour.
2. Johnny Dixie, circ. 50 years old ; native of Skidegate.
Tsimshian: 3. Johnny, circ. 32 years old; native of Fort Simpson.
4. William Seba'sa, circ. 28 years old; raven gens; native of Meqtlakqatla.
5. Peter Vann, Kesuwā'tk, circ. 25 years old; wolf gens ; native of Meqtlakqatla.
Kwakintl: 6. Nalakyutsa, circ. 50 years old; native of Fort Rapert.
Nootka: 7. Wispu, circ. 25 sears; Nitinath.


|  | Haida |  | Tsimshian ${ }^{\prime}$ |  |  | Kwakiutl | Nontka |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| III. Body. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Total height | 1,689 | 1,603 | 1,637 | 1,649 | 1,589 | 1,575 | 1.711 |
| Distance between finger-tips, the arms extended horizontally: | 1,705 | 1,692 | 1,727 | , | 1,676 | 1,664 | 1,829 |
| Height of chin . . . . | 1,441 | 1,353 | 1,413 | 1,405 | 1,356 | 1,343 | 1,470 |
| " top of sternum. | 1,365 | 1,287 | 1,306 | 1,317 | 1,278 | 1,273 | 1,391 |
| " shoulder (right) | 1,382 | 1,311 | 1,313 | 1,329 | 1,321 | 1,292 | 1,403 |
| " " (left). | 1-071 | 1,286 | 1,007 | 1,025 | $\overline{995}$ | - 965 | 1,065 |
| " elbow (right). | 1,071 | 968 | 1,007 | 1,025 | 995 | 965 | 1,065 |
| " wrist. . | 825 | 752 | 768 | 826 | 776 | 760 | 814 |
| ", second finger | 612 | 570 | 571 | 614 | 597 | 571 | 618 |
| " nipples . | 1,210 | 1,105 | 1,143 | 1,205 | - | 1,133 | 1,230 |
| ", navel ${ }^{\text {, }}$ | 970 | 913 | 933 | 946 | 876 | 897 | 985 |
| ", crista ilii | 940 | 930 | 930 | 943 | 905 | 933 | - |
| " symphysis. | - | 835 | 851 | - | - | 832 | - |
| " perinæum. | - | 711 | 721 | - | - | 714 | - |
| $\because \quad$ ant. sup. iliac spine | $\bar{\square}$ | 873 | 870 | 892 | 857 | 851 | - |
| " trochanter . | 861 | 841 | 829 | 825 | - | - | - |
| " patella | 444 | 444 | 400 | 427 | 438 | 429 | - |
| " malleolus internus | - | 86 | 83 | - | - | 89 | - |
| ", seventh vertebra | - | 1,362 | - | 1,400 | 1,353 | 1,299 | 1.475 |
| " vertex in sitting | - | 873 | 876 | - | - | 873 | 914 |
| Width between iliac spines | - | 267 | 267 | ' | - | - | - |
| " iliac crests | - | 292 | 298 | 二 | - | 283 | - |
| " trochanters | - | 314 | 314 | - | - | 289 | - |
| Circumference of chest | 910 | 930 | 960 | 940 | 950 | 925 | 945 |
| " waist | 800 | 815 | 822 | 822 | 825 | 860 | 727 |
| " thigh . | - | 508 | 524 | - | - | 480 | - |
| " calf of leg | - | 311 | 355 | - | - | 310 | - |
| Length of thamb . . | 67 | 65 | 60 | 63 | 57 | 63 | 65 |
| W, second finger | 98 | 101 | 97 | 97 | 97 | 98 | 98 |
| Width of hand at fingers. | 84 | 82 | 82 | 84 | 85 | 84 | 78 |
| Length of foot . . . | 243 | 245 | 241 | 236 | - | 245 | 251 |

It appears from these tables that the size of these Indians varies considerably; including measarements of nine Bilqula, made by R. Virchow (see ' Verh. Ges. f. Anthr., Ethn. u. Urg.' 1886, p. 215), the average beight is $1,655 \mathrm{~mm}$., the extremes being $1,743 \mathrm{~mm}$. and $1,542 \mathrm{~mm}$. I am under the impression that, as regards size, the Coast Salish are much smaller than the other tribes. The distance between the tips of the finger, the arms being extended, is in all cases greater than the total height. The skin is very light, resembling that of Europeans. Only No. 6 of the above table has a somewhat reddish hue. This, however, is due to the fact that he is the only one among the individuals measured who does not wear trousers and shirt, bat still adheres to the ancient custom of wearing a blanket. In most-cases the hair is black, smooth, coarse, and
abundant. In a few cases it bas a brownish tinge: In all tribes there are a few individưals who have slightly wavy hair. In the village of Sá'menos, in Cowitchin Valley, I observed wary or even carly hair comparatively frequently. It is worth remarking that the Indians have a tradition referring to this fact, which shows that this peculiarity has obtained for several generations. The eyebrows are thick, and remarkably wide on the outer side. This peculiarity may also be observed in the carvings of these tribes. The eyebrows are carefully trimmed. The beard is sparse, bat it must be remembered that the hair is generally pulled out as it appears, particularly on the cheeks, while the monstache and the chin-taft are allowed to grow. The iris is dark brown. Virchow first pointed out the frequent occurrence of the plica interna. I found it to occur very generally, particularly among the Haida and Tsimshian. The face is wide, the cheek-bones prominent, the index chammprosopic, averaging (including Virchow's measares) $83 \cdot 1$. The nose is narrow, the root narrow and depressed. The ridge of the nose is frequently depressed, particalarly among the Haida and Tsimshian ; while among the Nootka, Kwakintl, and Salish I observed very generally straight or slightly hooked noses. It seems that the heads of the southern tribes are decidedly more brachycephalic than those of the northern tribes; bat it is difficult to decide how far that is due to artificial deformation.

From the limited material at my disposal, I do not venture to describe any physical features as characteristic of one tribe or the other. The frequent intermarriages between the various tribes make it probable that none of them shows peenliar somatological characteristics which do not occur also among the neighbouring tribes. Notwithstanding this fact, it is quite possible to distinguish individuals belonging to various tribes, but this is principally due to the variety of artificial deformations. The Kwakiatl have a remarkably deep sinus in the hair at its anterior margin. Their heads are very long and wide, particularly when compared with the width of the face.

I am nable in the present report to give a full description of the crania and skeletons I collected; the latter belong principally to tribes of the Salish stock. I have only a single Tsimshian cranium, which, however, is of some interest. Plates I. to VI. are orthogonal tracings of four Tsimshian crania. No. 2 to 4 are from the Morton Collection in the Musenm of the Academy of Natural Sciences at Philadephia. The measurements of this series of crania are given in the table on the following page.

Notes.-No. 1 was a syphilitic individual. Marks of the disease are seen particularly aroand the bregma and on the right parietal bone. The cranium is asymmetrical, more particularly the occipat. The sagittal sutare in its hind part is depressed, while slight indications of a ridge may be seen in the part immediately behind the bregma. The face is narrow as compared to the other specimens. The grooves of the lachrymal duct are comparatively small. The most peculiar feature of the present skull is its dental and alveolar prognathism of the apper row of teeth, which project considerably over the lower one.

Nos. 2, 3, and 4 show very marked sagittal ridges. There is no indication of premature synostosis, and I conclude that this must be considered a characteristic featare of these skalls. No. 3 has a flattened occiput, bat without any compensatory flattening of the forehead. This
shows that the flattening is not intentional, but merely the result of the hardness: of the cradle board on which the child was kept. The cccipital spine and protuberance of No. 3 are very strongly developed, bat they are very marked in all the crania. The vertical plate of the ethmoid bone and the nasal process of the maxillary bones are in Nos. 2 and 3 much distorted.

Tsimshian.

| - | $\begin{gathered} \text { I. } \\ \text { Boäs, } \\ \text { No. } 85 . \\ \text { Hale } \end{gathered}$ | II. <br> Philadelphia, No. 213. Male | III. <br> Philadel- <br> phis, <br> -No. 214. | -IV. <br> Philadelpbia, No. 987. Youth, about 18 years of age |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Cramia. |  |  |  |  |
| 1. Horizontal length | 176 | 188 | 176 | 177 |
| 2. Maximum length . | 176 | 190 | 176 | 178 |
| 3. ${ }^{\text {a }}$ width | - 135 | 147 | 135 | 147 |
| 4. Minimum width of forchead | 89 | 91 | 87 | 95 |
| 5. Total height. | 130 | 134 | 127 | 129 |
| 6. Height of ear | 110 | 112 | 112 | 112 |
| 7. Length of hasis | 95 | 109 | 100 | 95 |
| 8. Width of basis | 99 | 119 | 106 | 102 |
| 9. Length of pars basilaris | 29 | 32 | 31 | 25 |
| 10. Max. width of For. Magn. . | 32 | 33 | 28 | 30 |
| 11. Max. length of For. Magn. . | 43 | 38 | 35 | 36 |
| 12. Horizontal circumference .- | 500 | - | - | 520 |
| 13. Sagittal circumference | 363 | - | - | 366 |
| 14. Vertical circumference. | 301 | - | - | 330 |
| 15. Width of face . . | 97 | 106 | 105 | 90 |
| 16. Width between zygm. arches | 126 | 149 | 139 | 124 |
| 17. Height of upper face | $69^{1}$ | 81 | 69 | 65 |
| 18. Height of nose . | 49 | 57 | 52 | 49 |
| 19. Max. width of nose | 26 | 24 | 25 | 22 |
| 20. Width of orbit | 38 | 41 | 40 | 41 |
| 21. Height of orbit | 32 | 36 | 35 | 36 |
| 22. Length of palate . . ${ }_{\text {2 }}$. | 50 | 59 | 54 | (45) |
| 23. Width of palate at second molar | 35 | 38 | 38 | 35 |
| 24. Width of palate at posterior end | 40 | - | 47 | 42 |
| 25. Length of face . . . | 96 | 102 |  | 95 |
| 26. Angle of profile | $83^{\circ}$ | $88^{\circ}$ | $86^{\circ}$ | - |
| Indices. |  |  |  |  |
| Length - width . | 76.7 | 78.2 | 76.7 | 83.0 |
| Length-height . . . | $73 \cdot 9$ | $71 \cdot 3$ | $72 \cdot 1$ | 729 |

I do not intend, in the present report, to treat of the deformed crania of the soatherptribes. Suffice it to say that three methods of deformation are practised in British Colambia: (i) the conical one, which results in the long heads of the Kwakiatl, and which is also used by the Çatloltq; (ii) the flattening by means of cushions and bandages, resulting irf asymmetrical byperbrachycephalic heads; and (iii) flattening by means of boards. It may be of interest to show the effect of these methods apon the length and width of the crania. The second group comprises only crania flattened by means of cushions. I add $\boldsymbol{g}^{2}$ short colamn of crania with little or no deformations.

[^2]| 1. Comox |  |  | 2. Sanitch |  | 3. Songish |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Length | Width | Length | Width | Length | Width |
|  | 171 | 150 | 158 | 158 | 192 | 144 |
|  | 181 | 149 | 160 | 147 | 186 | 144 |
|  | 173 | 138 | 171. | 153 | 183 | 142 |
|  | 162 | 131 | 162 | 158 | 176 | 139 |
|  | 179 | 145 | 141 | 152 | 178 | 144 |
|  | 177 | 135 | 161 | 156 | 190 | 147 |
|  | 178 | 143 | 156 | 155 | 189 | 143 |
|  | 186 | 147 | 147 | 138 | 180 | 140 |
|  | 171 | 138 | 156 | 137 | 180 | 140 |
|  | 174 | 139 | 169 | 164 | 187 | 146 |
|  | 175 | 142 - | 164 | 163 | 195 | 157 |
| Average | 175 | 142 | 159 | 153 | 185 | -144 |
| Indices | $\checkmark$ |  |  |  |  |  |

The following are measurements of a few Songish crania in the possession of Dr. Milne, of Victoria, British Columbia.

Songish Crania.

| $\cdots$ | I. | II. | III. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. Horizontal length | 183 | - | 181 |
| 2. Maximum length | 183.5 | 153 | 181 |
| 3. Intertuberal length . | $18 \cdot 5$ | 146 | 180 |
| 4. Maximum width | $139 \cdot 8$ | 154.6 | 154 |
| 5. Minimum width of forehead | 98 | 98 | 97 |
| 6. Total height | 143.2 | 123.2 | 138.5 |
| 7. Height of bregma | 141 | $122 \cdot 3$ | 137 |
| 8. Height of ear . | 114 | 106 | 117 |
| 9. Height from ear to vertex | 114 | 114* | 123 |
| 10. Length of basis | 103 | 89 | 101 |
| 10a. Width of basis | 111.2 | 106 | 118 |
| 11. Length of pars basilaris | - | $23 \cdot 5$ | 29 |
| 12. Max. width of foramen magnum | 33 | 34 | $37 \cdot 5$ |
| 13. Max. length of foramen magnum | $34 \cdot 5$ | 29 | 34 |
| 14. Horizontal circumference . | 523 | 485 | 535 |
| 15. Sagittal circumference | 375 | $321{ }^{2}$ | 382 |
| 16. Vertical circumference | 320 | 328 | 335 |
| 17. Width of face . . | 105 | 91.5 | 103 |
| 18. Width between zygom. arch | 146 | 130 | 148.5 |
| 19. Height of face . . | $\overline{7}$ | 101.5 | - |
| 20. Height of upper part of face | 72.5 | 61 | 76 |
| 21. Height of nose | 50 | 47 | 54 |
| 22. Max. width of nose . | $22 \cdot 7$ | 22 | 26.5 |
| 23. Max. width of orbit . . | 42 | 38.5 | 44 |
| 24. Horizontal width of orbit | 41.5 | 38 | 41 |
| 25. Maximum height of orbit | $36 \cdot 5$ | 35 | $35 \cdot 5$ |
| 25. Vertical height of orbit - | 37 | 35 | 36 |
| 27. Length of palate - | 49 | 45 | 51.5 |
| 28. Width of palate at second molar | 34 | 35 | 41 |
| 29. Width of palate at posterior end | 46 | 39 | 47 |
| 30. Length of face. . . . | 102 | 88 | 100 |

[^3]Finally, I give a series of measurements of seven crania from Lytton, pröbably of the Ntlakyapamuq, collected a number of years ago by Dr. G. M. Dawson, who kindly had the measurements made at my request.

## Skulls from Lytton B. O. in the Mruseum of the Geological and Natural History Survey of Canada.

|  | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No. } \\ & 368 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No. } \\ & 369 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No. } \\ & 370 \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { No. } \\ & 371 \end{aligned}$ | No: 37: | No. 373 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { N } n . \\ & 3 \overline{4} \end{aligned}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1. Maximum length | 174 | 185 | 167 | 173 | 182 | 175 | 173 |
| 2. Horizontal length | 173 | - | 167 | 172 | 181 | 175 | 169 |
| 3. Maximum width | 139 | 140 | 138 | 139 | 131 | 144 | 132 |
| 4. Minimum width of forehead | 94 | 96 | 91 | 86 | 94 | 96 | 93 |
| 5. Total height | 127 | - | 132 | 131 | 135 | 134 | 134 |
| 6. Height of ear | 111 | - | 92 | 110 | 121 | 123 | 120 |
| 7. Length of basis | 99 | - | 97 | 96 | 99 | 103 | 102 |
| 8. Horizontal circumference | 497 | 516 | 485 | 497 | 506 | 516 | 494 |
| 9. Sagittal circumference | 346 | 375 | 346 | 358 | 386 | 349 | 346 |
| 10. Vertical circumference | 314 | 321 | 305 | 307 | 307. | 324 | 311 |
| 11. Width of face . | 107 | - | 112 | 115 | 111 | 122 | - |
| 12. Width between zyg. arch | - | - | - | 127 | 135 | - | - |
| 13. Height of face ${ }^{-}$ | 62 | - | 68 | 72 | 64 | 69 | 64 |
| 14. Heirht of nose | 51 | - | 52 | 55 | 49 | 40 | 47 |
| 15. Width of nose | 21 | - | 23 | 2.5 | 23 | 26 | 22 |
| 16. Angle of profile | $88^{\circ}$ |  | $79^{\circ}$ | $80^{\circ}$ | $88^{\circ}$ | $85^{\circ}$ | $82^{\circ}$ |
| Length—width-index | $80 \cdot 4$ | $75 \cdot 7$ | $82 \cdot 6$ | $80 \cdot 4$ | $72 \cdot 4$ | $82 \cdot 3$ | $78 \cdot 1$ |

## Senses and Mental Characters.

It is only with a considerable degree of diffidence that I venture to express an opinion on the senses, mental capacity, and character of the natives of British Columbia. Observations made in the course of a few days hardly entitle an obscrver to judge of the mental faculties or of the virtues and vices of a people. The only tribes with whom I came into closer contact are the Tlatlasikoala of Hope Island and the Çatloltq of Comox, among both of whom I lived for a few weeks in 1886.

The Indians of the whole coast are able-bodied and muscular, the upper limbs being very generally better developed than the lower ones, as the constant use of the paddle strengthens arms and chest. They have a keen sight, but in old age become frequently blear-eyed, presumably an effect of the smoke which always fills the houses. I bave not made any experiments regarding, their acnteness of sight, hearing, and smell. Their mental capacity is undoubtedly a high one. The state of their culture is ample proof of this. I have expressed my opinion regarding the possibility of educating them at another place.

The best material for judging their character is contained in their stories, in which appears what is considered good and what bad, what commendable and what objectionable, what beautiful and what otherwise. Regarding the last point, whiteness of skin and slenderness of limbs is considered one of the principal beanties of men and women. Another beanty of the latter is long, black hair. In some tales red hair is described as a peculiar beauty of women. Red paint on the face, tighttitting bracelets and anklets of copper, nose- and ear-ornaments of varicgated haliotis shells, and hair strewn with eagle-downs add to the
natural charms. The fact that in honour of the arrival of friends the house is swept and strewn with sand, and that the people bathe at such occasions, shows that cleanliness is appreciated. The current expression is that the house is so cleaned that no bad smell remains to offend the guest. For the same reason the-Indian takes repeated baths before praying, 'that he may be of agreeable smell to the Deity.'

The Indian is grave and self-composed in all his actions. This is shown by the fact that playing is not only considered undignified, bat actually as bad. In the Tsimshian language the term for 'to play' means to talk to no purpose; and doing anything 'to no parpose' is contemptible to the Indian.

He is rash in his anger, but does not easily lose control over his actions. He sits down or lies down sullenly for days without partaking of food, and when he rises his first thought is, not how to take revenge, but to show that he is snperior to his adversary. A great pride and vanity, combined with the most susceptible jealousy, characterise all actions of the Indian. He watches that he may receive his proper share of honour at festivals; he cannot endure to be ridicaled for even the slightest mistake; he carefully guards all his actions, and looks for due honour to be paid to him by friends, strangers, and subordinates. This peculiarity appears most clearly in great festivals, which are themselves an outcome of the vanity of the natives, and of their love of displaying their power and wealth. To be strong, and able to sustain the pangs of hunger, is evidently considered worthy of praise by the Indian; bat fore. most of all is wealth.

It is considered the duty of every man to have pity apon the por $r$ and hangry. Women are honoured for their chastity and for being true to their husbands; children, for taking care of their parents; men, for skill and daring in hunting, and for bravery in war.

Closely connected with their vanity is their inclination to flatter the stranger or friend, but particularly anyone who is expected to be of service to the Indian. Vanity and servility are the most unamiable traits of his character. Wit and hamour are little appreciated, although they are not wanting. The character of the Indian, on thie whole, is sombre, and he is not given to gentle emotions. Even his festivals have this character, as he retains his dignity throughout.

## Food-Henting and Fishing-Clothing-I Implenents.

It is not the object of this report to give a full description of the rarious kinds of food and of the methods of hanting and tishing. It seems, bowever, desirable to mention the most important points in connection with this subject.

The principal part of the food of the natives is derived from the sea. It seems that whales are pursued only exceptionally, though the West Vancourer tribes are great whalers. Sea-lions and seals are 1 arpo ned, the barbed harpoon-point being either attached to a bladder or tied to the stem of the boat. The harpoon lines are made of cedar-bark and sinews. The meat of these sea-animals is eaten, while their intestines are used for the manufacture of bowstrings and bags. The bristles of the sealion are used by the Tsimshian and the neighbouring tribes for adorning dancing ornaments. Codfish and halibat are caught by means of h roks. These are attached to fish-lines made of cedar-twigs, or, what is more
frequently used, of kelp. The hook, the form of which is well known, is provided with a sinker, while the upper part is kept afloat by a bladder or by a piece of wood. The hooks are set, and after a while taken up. Cattle-fish is extensively used for bait. The fish are either roasted near or over the fire, or boiled in baskets or wooden kettles by means of redhot stones. Those intended for use in winter are split in strips and dried in the sun, or on frames that are placed over the fire. I did not observe such frames among the tribes south of the Snanaimuq. The most important fish, however, is the salmon, which is caught in weirs when ascending the rivers, in fish-traps, or by means of nets dragged between two boats. Later in the season salmon are harpooned. For fishing in deep water a very long double-pointed harpoon is used. Herring and olachen are caught by means of a long rake. The latter are tried in canves filled with water, which is heated by means of red-hot stones. The oil is kept in bottles made of dried and cleaned kelp. In winter dried halibut dipped in oil is one of the principal dishes of the tribes living on the outer coast. Fish, when caught, are carried in open-work wooden baskets. Clams and mussels are collected in a similar kind of basket. They are eaten roasted, or dried for winter use. Cuttle-fish are canght by means of long sticks; sea-eggs, in mets which are fastened to a round frame. Fish-roe, particularly that of herrings, is collected in great quantities, dried, and eaten with oil.
Sea-grass is cut in pieces and dried so as to form square cakes, which are also eaten with oil, as are all kinds of dried berries and roots. The
Fig. 1. Kwakiutl and their neighbours keep their provisions in large boxes. These are bent out of thin planks of cedar. At those places where the edges of the box are to be, a triangalar strip is cut out of the plank, which is thas reduced in thickness. Then it is bent so that the sides of the triangle touch each other.
After three edges have been made, the sides of the fourth are sewed together. The bottom is either sewed or nailed to the box. The lid

Fig. 2.
 either overlaps the sides of the box (fitting on it as the cover on a pill-box) or moves on a kind of hinges. In the latter case it has always the following form.

The Coast Salish keep their stock of provisions on a loft, with which every house is provided.
In winter deer are hauted. Formerly bows and arrows were used for this purpose, but they have now been replaced by guns. The bow was made of yew-wood. The arrows had stone, bone, and iron points. The bow was held horizontally, the shaft of the arrow resting between the first and second fingers of the left hand, that grasps the rounded central part of the bow, while the arrow is held between the thumb and the side of the first finger. Deer are also captared by being driven into large nets made of cedar-bark, deer-sinews, or nettles. Elk are hunted in the same way. For smaller amimals traps are used. Birds are shot with arrows provided with a thick wooden plag instead of a point.

Deer-skins are worked into leather and ased for varions parposes, principally for ropes, and formerly for clothing. The natives of this iegion go barelegged. The principal part of their clothing is the blanket. This is made of tanned skins, or more frequently woven of mountainsheep wool, dog's hair, or of a mixtare of both. The thread is spon on the bare leg, and by means of a stone spindle. The blanket is woven on a
solid frame. Another kind of blanket is woven of soft cedar-bark, the warp being tied across the weft. They are trimmed with far. At the present time woollen blankets are extensively used. Men wear a shirt under the latter, whila women wear a petticoat in addition. Before the introduction of woollen blankets, women used to wear an apron made of cedar-bark and a belt made of the same material. The head is covered with a water-tight hat made of roots. In rainy weather and in the canoe a water-tight cape or a poncho, both made "of cedar-bark, is used. The women dress their hair in two plaits, while the men wear it comparatively short. The latter keep it back from the face by means of a strap of fur or cloth. Ear and nose ornaments are extensively used. They are made of bone and haliotis-shell.

Besides the baskets mentioned above, a variety of others are used, some made of dried seaweed, for keeping sewing-utensils; others made of cedar-bark, for storing away blankets. Still others are used for carrying the travelling outfit. They bave two straps attached to them, one passing over the brow, the other over the breast, of the carrier. Watertight baskets made of roots are ased for cooking parposes and for holding water. Mats made of cedar-bark, of reed, and of rushes are used to a great extent, for covering the walls of the house, for bedding, for packing, for travelling in canoes, \&c.

In olden times work in wood was extensively done by means of stone implements. Of these, only stone hammers are still used. They äre either carved stones, flat on one side, and haring a notch in the middle, attached to a handle by means of a leather strap, or they are similar in shape to a pestle. Trees were felled with stone axes, and split by means of wooden or horn-wedges. The latter are still extensively used. In order to prevent the wooden wedge from splitting, a cedar-bark rope is firmly tied around its top. Boards are split out of trees by means of these wedges. They were planed with adzes, a considerable number of which were made of jade that was evidently found in the basin of Fraser and Lewis Rivers. Carvings were made with stone kinives. Stone mortars and pestles were used for mashing berries and bark, the latter for being mixed with tobacco. Paint-pots of stone, with two or more excavations, were extensively used. Pipes were made of slate or wood.

Canoes are principally made of cedar-wood. After the tree has been felled, about one-third of its thickness is removed by means of wedges, the outer side worked according to the proposed dimensions of the boat, and then the tree is hollowed by means of axes, fire, and adres. When the sides of the canoe have almost reached the desired thickness, it is filled with water, which is heated by means of red-hot stones. Thus the rood becomes pliable, and is gradually shaped. In large canoes the gunwale is made bigher by fastening a board to it. The northern tribes ase the so-called 'Tsimshian canoe,' which hes a high prow and a high stern. The sonthern tribes use the 'Chinook canoe,' which has a smaller prow, and the stern of which is straight up and down. Some other types of boats are used for the purposes of war and fishing. The boat is propelled and steered by means of paddles. In hanting there is a steersman in the stern of the canoe, while the harponeer stands in the stem. It seems that sails have been used only since the advent of the whites. They are sometimes made of mats of cedar-bark. Most of the large boats have names of their own. For fishing on rivers very narrow canoes are ased, which differ somewhat in shape among the various tribes.

The Salish of the interior and the Lower Kootenay also live to a great extent npon fish. They use dug-out canoes, in which they navigate the lakes and rapid rivers. Fish are caught by means of hooks, bat principally in bagrets. Deer, elk, mountain goat, big-horn sheep, and bears are hunted extensively. At the present time these tribes raise considerable numbers of horse $s$, which are used in hanting and travelling. The apper Kootenay are principally hunters. They used to cross the mountains and hant buffalo on the plains. The Salish dress in the blanket, in the same way as the coast tribes do; while the clothing of the Kootenay resembles that worn by the Indians of the plains. They wear moccasins, leggings, breeches, and a backskin jacket, trimmed with metal and leather fringes. Men and women wear braids wound with brass spirals and trimmed with beads.

The art of pottery is unknown in British Columbia, and in the eastern parts of the province little carving in wood is done. Large baskets serve for cooking purposes. Stone hammers and pestles and mortars are still used throughout the Province.

I cannot give a satisfactory account of the arts and industries of the tribes of the interior, as these have been supplanted by the use of European manufactures, and old implements are scarce and difficult to obtain.

## Houses.

The coast tribes live in large wooden houses. The plan of the house of the northern tribes differs somewhat from that of the Coast Salish, although the mode of construction is the same. The framework of the house consists of heavy posts, which support long beams. The walls and the roof are constructed of beavy planks. Those forming the walls rest upon strong ropes of cedar-bark connecting two poles, one of which stands inside the wall, while the other is outside. The boards overlap each other in order to prevent the rain from penetrating the house. The boards forming the roof are arranged like Chinese tiles. The rain flows off on the lower boards, as through a gutter.

The honse of the northern tribes is square. It faces the sea. A

- platform of about two feet high and four feet wide rans all around it iuside. It has a gable roof, which is supported by one or two beams resting on two pairs of heavy posts which stand in the centre of the front and of the rear of the house. The door is between the pair of posts standing near the front of the house. Three or four steps lead up to the door, which is on the platform. Very large houses have two or three platforms, and thus attain, to some extent, the shape of an amphitheatre. The houses are generally occupied by four families, each living in one corner. Small sheds are built on the platforms, all along the walls of the houses. They serve for bedrooms. Each family has its own fireplace, near which the enormous family settee, capable of holding the whole family, stands. Some of the honses of the Hēiltsuk• and Bilqula are built on posts, the floor being about eight feet above the ground. In these houses the fireplaces are made of earth and of stones. The Tsimshian, Haida, and Tlingit make a hole in the centre of the roof for a smokeescape, while the Kwakintl merely pash aside one or two boards of the roof.

The houses of the Coast Salish and Nootka are very long, being occupied by a great many families, each of whom owns one section. The roofs are highest in the rear part of the house, and slope downward
tow the here whi five for
trav
to w
a ga
conv
canv
tote tious ber ting alwa the the of $t$

The the Hēil toter The ${ }_{j}$ same four Thes that The clear wolf, mem to th withs far a bas $f$
rega, have tain of th farth Salis these
towards the front. There is also a platform running along the walls of the houses; bat while in the houses of the Kwakiatl it is made of earth, here it is carefully built of wood. All along the rear wall of the hoase, which is somewhat higher than the opposite, runs a loft, which is about five feet wide. It is used as a storeroom. There are no sheds serving for bedrooms, but the beds are arranged on the platforms. ${ }^{1}$

The houses here described are found in stationary villages. In travelling small sheds made of bark, of wood, or of branches are used.

The Salish of the interior used to live in subterranean houses, access to which was obtained from above. These were used in winter, and afforded a good shelter from the severe cold. In summer tents were used.

The Kootenay live in large lodges, the framework of which consists of converging poles. They used to be covered with buffalo hides, but now canvas is mostly used.

## Social Organisation.

J. G. Frazer, in his comprehensive review of totemism, defines the totem as 'a class of material objects which a savage regards with superstitious respect, believing that there exists between himself and every member of tho class an intimate and altogether special relation. As distinguished from a fetish, a totem is never an isolated individual, bat always a class of objects.' Accepting this definition, I will try to outline the peculiar kind of totemism as observed in British Columbia. Among the Kootenay and Salish of the interior I did not find the slightest trace of the existence of totems.

The Tlingit, Haida, Tsimshian, and Hēiltsuk. have animal totems. The first of these have two phratries-the raven and eagle (or wolf); the Tsimshian have four totems-raven, eagle, wolf, and bear; the Hēiltsuk• three-raven, eagle, and killer (Delphinus orca). Animal totems in the proper sense of this term are confined to these four peoples. They are not found among the Kwäkiutl, although they belong to the same linguistic stock to which the Hëiltsak belong. The clans of the four peoples mentioned above bear the names of their respective totems. These phratries or clans are exogamous. It must be clearly understood that the natives do not consider themselves descendants of the totem. The Tlingit, for instance, who believe in a transmigration of souls, state clearly and plainly that a man will be born again as a man, a wolf as a wolf, a raven as a raren, notwithstánding the fact that the animal and a member of its clan are considered relations. Thus the wolf gens will pray to the wolves, 'We are your relations; pray don't hart us!' But notwithstanding this fact they will hunt wolves without hesitation. So far as I am aware, this is true of all tribes, although the opposite view has frequently been expressed. All my endeavours to obtain information regarding the supposed origin of this relation between man and animal have in variably led to the telling of a myth, in which it is stated how a certain ancestor of the clan in question obtained his totem. The character of these legends is uniform among all the peoples of this region; even farther sonth, among the Kwākintl and the northern tribes of the Coast Salish, who have no animal totem in the restricted sense of this term. As these legends reveal the fundamental views the natives hold in regard to

[^4]their totems. I shall give abstracts of some of them. The following are from the Tsimshian.

The Bear Gens.-An Indian went mountain-goat lunting. When he had reached a remote mountain range he met a black bear, who took him to his home, taught him how to catch salmon and how to build boats. Two years the man stayed with the bear ; then he returned to his village. All people were afraid of him, for he looked just like a bear. One man, however, caught him and took him home. He could not speak, and could not eat anything bat raw food. Then they rabbed him with magic herbs, and he was retransformed into the shape of a man. Thenceforth, when he was in want, he went into the woods, and his friend the bear helped him. In winter, when the rivers were frozen, he canght plenty of salmon. He built a house, and painted the bear on the front of it. His sister made a dancing-blanket, the design of which represented a bear. Therefore the descendants of his sister use the bear for their crest.

The Whale Gens.-Tseremsā'aks went out fishing. After he had been out three days without having caught-a single fish, he cast anchor at the base of a steep hill. His anchor fell upon the house of the whale, who drew the boat to the bottom of the sea. Two years he remained with the whale, who tanght him his dance, and gave him the ornaments of his house. When Tseremsā'aks returned he was grown all over with seaweed. The time which he had staid at the bottom of the sea had seemed to him two days, but he had been there two years. He built a house, and painted the whale upon its front. He also used the mask and the blanket of the whale when dancing. Since that time the descendants of his sisters use this design.

There is another tale belonging to the Raven Gens of the Tsimshian : Yaqagwono'osk was the descendant of a man who had been taken to the bottom of the ocean like Tseremsā'aks. He was a great chief, and once invited all chiefs of the whole earth to a great feast, which was to be celebrated at Nass River. All the monsters of the whole coast came, using whales (Delphinus orca) for their boats. They were so numerous that the river was full of them. They landed and entered Yaqagwonō'osk's house. Whenever one of them opened the door water flowed into the house. Each wore his peculiar clothing. The first to enter was Kuwâ'k (this and the following names are those of dangerous points and of rapids). He was followed by Tlkwats'a'q, Kntepwe'n, Ktlkao'l, Spaed'ana'kt, Kspaha'watlk. These last were very dangerons, and used to kill everyone passing their houses. The most dangerous monsters were seated in the rear of the house, the others around the platform nearer the door. The next to enter was Lak anpetsé'qtl. He wore a head-ring, which was made of twigs that passers-by used to give him in order to secure his good-will. Then came Walnebālg•ätlso'ks and Wude'ano'n (=great hands). Yaqagwonō'osk gave everyone what he liked best: fat, tobacco, red paint, and eagle-down. All present promised to abstain henceforth from killing people, and after their return removed from the track of the canoes plying between the villages. Yaqagwono ${ }^{-1}$ osk
cluc
gror
Tlin
described-that is, his nephews and nieces, and their descendants in the fermale line-use the emblems he obtained in consequence of his adventure. This accounts for the diversity of emblems and the variety of their grouping on the carvings, paintings, and tattooings of the Indians. In these cases the whole groap would therefore more properly be styled phratry than gens. The raven and wolf (eagle) groups of the Tlingit and Haida are pre-eminently phratries. Each gens, which forms a subdivision of the phratries, derives its origin from one of these mythical ancestors who had an encounter with one of the animals of the phratry.

The following is a partial list of the totems of each of the two phratries of the Tlingit:-
I. Raven : Raven, frog, goose, sea-lion, owl, salmon, beaver, codfish (wēq), skate.
II. Wolf (eagle): Wolf, bear, eagle, Delphinus orca, shairk, auk, gall, sparrow-hawk (g'anō'k), thunder-bird.
Among this and all other tribes of the coast the crest of a group includes those animals which serve as the food of the animal from which the group takes its name.

As an example I enumerate the gentes of the Stikin tribe of the Tlingit, the only one with members of whom I came into closer contact. I give also the chief emblems of each gens:-
I. Wolf: Nanaā'ri or siknaq'a'dē, bear (corresponds to the Kagontā'n of other Tlingit tribes).
Qōk•ēdē, Delphinus orca.
II. Raven: K•asq'aguē'dē, raven. Kyiks'a'dè, frog. K•atc'a'dè, raven. Tir hit tān (=bark house gens), beavier. Dētlk'oédē (=people of the point), خ̌aven. $\mathrm{K} \cdot \mathrm{agan}$ hit $\tan$ (=sun house gens), raven. Qētlk-oan, beaver.
Among these the gens Nanaā'ri has six houses, the people of each forming a sub.gens:-

> 1. Harā'c hit tan, porch house gens.
> 2. Tos hit tan, shark house gens.
> 3. K''ētgō hit tan,
> 4. Qūts hit tan, bear house gens.

The names of the remaining two honses I did not learn.
The proper names of members of the various gentes are derived from their respective totems, each gens having its peculiar names. The connection between name and totem is sometimes not very clear, but it always exists. Here are a few examples taken from gentes of the Stikin tribe:-

## Nanaä'ri nàmes:

Male: Tl'uck' $E^{\prime}$, ugly (dangerface), referring to the bear. G•aqe', crying man (referring to the howling wolf). Sēktutlqētl, scared of his voice (to wit, the wolf's). Ank aqu'ts, bear in sprow.

[^5]
# Feniale: Qutc gra's, standing bear. 

Hē leng djat, thunder-woman. Kan djat, whale-woman.
:

Qōk $\bar{k} \cdot{ }^{\prime} d \bar{e}$ names :
Cak $\cdot \bar{a}^{\prime}$ ts, head-stick (reference donbtful). Gōuq narū', slave's dead body (reference doubtful).

## Dētlk•oèdè names:

Yētl redē', little raven.
Tie'neqk, one alone (the raven on the beach).
Hiqtc tlē'n, great frog.
Yētl $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{n}$ djat, raven's wife.
The social organisation of the Haida is very much like that of the Tlingit. They have also two phratries, raven and eagle. Their totems are also similar to those of the Tlingit, bat they are differently arranged. The most important difference is that the raven is an emblem of the eagle gens.

> I. Eagle phratry (Gyitena'): Eagle, raven, frog, beaver, shark, moon, duck, codfish (l'a'ma), waski (fabulous whale with five dorsal fins), whale, owl.
> II. Raven phratry (K'oa'la): Wolf, bear, Delphinus orca, skate, mountain goat, sea-lion, ts'E'maōs (a sea-monster), moon, sun, rainbow, thunder-bird.

From some indications I conclude that the division of emblems between the two phratries is not the same among the Kaigani and the tribes of Queen Charlotte Islands, bat the subject requires further stady.

The phratries of the Haida are divided into gentes in the same way as those of the Tlingit. They also take their names, in the majority of cases, from their houses. The people of Skidegate village (Ilk-agitl), for instance, are divided into the following gentes:-
I. Eagle phratry : Nā yū'ans qā'etqa, large house people.

Na s'ā'gas qā'etqa, old house people.
Dj'àaquīg'it 'ena'i,
Gyitingits 'ats,
II. Raven phratry: Naèku'n k $\cdot$ ēranā̀'i, those born in Naēku'n.

Djāaqui'sk uatl'adagāi (extinct).
Tlqaiu lā'nas,
$K \cdot \bar{a} s t a k \cdot \bar{e}^{\prime} r a u \bar{a}$ ái, those born in Skidegate Street.
The following gentes are said to exist in one of the Kaigani villages. I did not learn the gentes of the eagle phratry.
I. Ts'ātl lā'nas, eagle.
II. Yak' lā'nas=middle town. Raven.
Yatl nas :had'a' $i^{1}=$ raven house people.
k'at nas :had'ā'i=shark house people.
gutgunést nas :had'a'i=owl house people.

[^6]> qo' ate nas :had'á' $i=$ bear house people. na $k \cdot{ }^{\prime} \bar{a} l$ nas :had'á'i=empty house people.
> $\mathrm{t}^{\prime} \mathrm{a}^{\prime}$ rō nas :bad'à'i=copper house people.
> knu nas :bad'à' $i=$ whale house people.
> g'Egihét nas :had'ā'i=land-otter house people.
> $\mathrm{k} \cdot$ 'èt nas :had' ${ }^{\prime}$ ' $\mathrm{i}=$ sea-lion house people.
> :hōt nas :had'ā' $i=$ box house people.
> $k^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} k^{\prime}$ nas :had'à' $\mathrm{i}=$ snow-owl house people.

From the first of these lists it will be seen that two of these gentes are called from the locality which they formerly inhabited. Wemiaminow and Krause noted a few Tlingit gentes which were also named from the places at which their houses stood, and one name of this kind is found on the preceding list on p. 25. The majority of gentes are called from the names and emblems of their hocses. If a new house is built by the chief of the gens it receives the name of the old one, the place of which it takes. These facts show that the honses mast be considered commanal houses of the gentes. The members of the gens are connected by ties of consanguinity, not by an imaginary relationship through the totem. The latter exists only inside the phratry. It mast be borne in mind that the emblems of the gens are only emblems commemorative of certain events, that they do not indicate any relationship between man and emblem. This becomes particularly clear in the case of the Haida phratries, where the raven is the emblem of the eagle phratry and is not used by the raven phratry. Gentes of great numerical strength are subdivided. The houses of each gens always stand grouped together.

The single gentes do not possess the whole series of emblems pertaining to the phratry. Among the Skidegate gentes enumerated above, the one called $N \bar{a} \bar{a} s^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} y a s ~ h a s ~ t h e ~ f o l l o w i n g ~ e m b l e m s: ~ r a v e n, ~ s h a r k, ~ e a g l e, ~$ frog. Their chief has, in addition to these, the fabolous five-finned whale $r_{0}\left({ }^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}\right.$ and the fish l'a'ma (codfish ?). Before giving a festival the child of the eagle gens must use no other emblem but the eagle.

Any Haida who has the raven among his emblems, when marrying a Tlingit, is considered a member of the raven phratry, and vice vers $\hat{a}$, the emblems always deciding to which phratry an individual is to be reckoned.

The social organisation of the Tsimshian is somewhat different from that of the preceding group of peoples. They have four gentes: the raven, called K•anha'da; the eagle, Laqski'yek ( $=$ on the eagle) ; the wolf, Laqkyebō' (=on the wolf); and the bear, Gyispütuwe'da. The follorring is a partial list of their emblems.

1. K•nha'da: Raven, codfish, starfish.
2. Laqski'yek: Eagle, halibat, beaver, whale.
3. Laqkyebō' : Wolf, crane, grizzly bear.
4. Gyispōtawe'da: Delphinus orca, sun, moon, stars, rainbow, grouse, tsem'aks (a sea-monster).
The Tsimshian are divided into three classes : common people, middleclass people, and chiefs. Common people are those who have not been initiated into a secret society (v. p. 52 ) ; by the initiation they become middle-class people; bat they can never become chiefs, who form a distinct class. Each gens has its own proper names, which are different for chiefs and middle-class people. It seems that, as a rule, the names
are common to all tribes, with the exception of a few chiefs' names, which will be noted later on. These names are different, according to the gens to which the father belongs, and have always a reference to the father's crest. Here are a few instances :-

## K•anha'da names.

1. A K•anha'da woman marries a Laqski'yek man.

Middle-class names:-
Male: Nēesyūlâ'ops=grandfather carrying stones.
Female: Laqtlpō'n=on a whale.
Chiefs' names :-
Male : Nēeswoksenā'tlk=grandfather of the not-breathing one.
Female : Ndsē'edsd'a'loks=grandmother of ?
Ndsé'ets lé'itlks=watching's grandmother. Lid'amloqdà' $\mathbf{u}=$ (eagle) sitting on the ice.
2. A K•anha'da woman marries a Gyispotuwe'da man.

Name of female: $\mathrm{Nebo}^{\prime} h t=$ making noise to each other (killers). Names of male: Wud'adà'u=large icebergs (floating at Kuwầk). Wiha' $=$ great wind.

## Laqskī'yek names,

1. A Laqski'yek woman marries a $K \cdot a n h a^{\prime}$ da man. Male : Wonlö'otk (raven) =having no nest.
2. A Laqski'yek woman marries a Laqkyebō' man.

Female: Demdēmâksk=wishing to be white.
3. A Laqski'yek woman marries a Gyi'spōtuwe'da man.

Names of females: Wibō'=great noise (of killers). Winēeq = great fin (of killer).
Names of males: Qpi'yēlek=half-hairy sea-monster (abbreviated from Qpī litl hag'ulō'oq). Hats'eksné'eq = dreadful fin (of killer).

## Laqkyelō names.

1. A Laqkyebō woman marries a Laqski'yek man.

Chief's daughter's name : Saraitqag• $\bar{a}$ ' $i=$ eagle having one colour of wings.

## Gyīspotuwe'da names.

1. A Gyispotawe'da woman marries a K•anha'da man.

Female: $B^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}$ yok (raven) =flying in front of the house early in the morning; abbreviated from Seō'pgyibā'yak. The eldest daughter is always given this name.

In each village the honses of members of each gens are grouped together. The phratries of the Haida correspond to the Tsimshian
gentes in such a way that raven and eagle on one side, wolf and bear on the other, are amalgamated.

The Hëiltsuk of Milbank Sound are also in the maternal stage, and are divided into clans having animal totems. There are three of them :-

1. Kōirtēnoq (=raven people), raven, starish, sun, g•oy amátsē (box in which the sun was kept before the raven liberated it). Their hoose is painted all black.
2. Wík'oak $\cdot$ Htēncq (=eagle people). Thunder-bird (K•ani'sltsua), an enormons dancing-hat.
3. Ha'lq'aintēnoq (=killer people). Delphinus orcx, K•omō'k•oa. A huge month is painted on the house-front, the posts are killers, two fish named Meltani'gun are painted at both sides of the door. Sealions (which are considered the dog of $\left.K \cdot 0^{-1}{ }^{\prime} k \cdot o a\right)$ are the crossbeams.

The most southern tribe which belongs to this group are the Awiky'énoq of Rivers Inlet. Further south, and among the Bilqula, patriarchate prevails. The social organisation of these tribes differs fundamentally from that of the northern group. We do not find a single clan that has, properly speaking, an animal for its totem; neither do the clans take their names from their crest, nor are there phratries. It seems as though the members of each gens were really kindred. The 'first' of each gens is said to have been sent by the deity, or to have risen from the depth of the ocean or the earth to a certain place which became his home.

I shall give abstracts of a few of these legends, which will explain the character of the clans of the Kwākintl.
 the shape of a bird carrying a neck-ring of red cedar-bark. ${ }^{1}$ He built a house and made a large fire. Then a woman called Lōtlemãka rose from under the earth. He spoke to her: ' You shall stay with me and he my sister.' Thenceforth they lived in opposite corners of the house. The Kwats'ē'nok• had heard of Hélikilikila's neck-ring, and made a futile attempt to steal it. When one of them entered the house where Hélikilikila was sleeping, he was stricken with madness. Hélikilikila, however, cured him, gave him the ring, and the Kwats'e'nok' retarned home. Since that day they dance the Tsētsā'èk•a, in which rings of red cedar-bark are used.

I解laqa.-Two eagles and their young descended from heaven and alighted at Qu'mqate (Cape Scott). They took off their eagle-skins and became men. The father's name was Na'laqōtau; that of the mother Ank-àlayuk oa; and the young was called Lé̄laqa. One day the latter parsued a seal, which, when far away from the coast, wats transformed into a cuttle-fish, and drowned Lélaqa. After a while he awoke to new life, and flew to heaven in the shape of an eagle. Then he returned to his parents, who had mourned for him, for they believed him to be dead. They saw an eagle descending from heaven. In his talons he carried a little box, in which he had many whistles imitating the voice of the eagle. He wore the double mask Naqnakyak-umtl and a neck-ring of red cedar bark. He became the ancestor of the gens Nee'ntsa.
$S_{E^{\prime}}$ ntlaé.- SE'ntlae, the sun, descended in the shape of a bird from hearen, assumed the shape of a man, and built a hoase in Yik' ${ }^{\prime}$ 'men. Then be wandered to $\mathrm{K} \cdot \mathbf{o}^{\prime}$ moks, visited the Tlau'itsis, the Nemk $i c$, and

[^7]$\mathrm{Na}^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} k$ oartok', and finally reached Tlikai'nae ( $=$ the plain at the mouth of the river, where clover-root is found), in the country of the Kwäkintl, where he settled at K•'aioq. He took a wife among each tribe whom he visited, and his family has the name Sisintlē. He resolved to stay in Tliksi'naē, and took a Kwākiatl woman for his wife. They had a son, whom they called Tsqtsqâ'lis. On each side of the door of their house they painted a large sun. The posts are men, each carrying a sun. They are called Lēla'qtotpes, and were Se'ntlaè's slaves. The crossbars resting upon the posts also represent men, while the beams are sea-lions. The stcps leading to the house-door are three men called Tlénonis. During the winter dances the Sisintle ase the mask of the sun, Tléselak ametl ; in the dance Yā'wiqa, that of the $\operatorname{dog} \mathrm{Ka}^{\prime} \mathrm{l}$ сqsâ (=the sun shining red through the clouds), who descended with $\mathrm{Se}^{\prime}$ itlae from heaven. Their heraldic column is called SEatléqḕm. It represents a series of copper plates, on the top of which a man called Lāqt'otpes (singular of Léla'qt'otpes=he who gives presents to strangers only) is standing. Abore all is the mask of the sun emitting rays.

Of special importance is the connection of the ancestors of these gentes with K•a'nikilak (meaning doubtfal), the sqn of the dcity. He is the ancestor of a gens of the Nako'mkilisila, who, upon the strength of this legend, clairm a superiority to all others. This point seems of sufficient importance to be given in greater detail. I was told that in the far west there lived a chief called $\mathrm{Ha}^{\prime}$ nitsum (the possessor of arrows), who had a daughter called Airtsuma'letlilok; (with many earrings of haliotis shells). $\mathrm{K} \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime}$ nikilak' went into his boat $\mathrm{K} \cdot \mathrm{ok}^{-0^{\prime}}$ malis, and after long wandering he reached Hínitsum's house. He married the latter's danghter, and took her home to Koà'né (near Cape Scott). They had a son, who received the name of Häneus. He lived to be a great chief.

K-anikilak wandered all over the world. In his wanderings be encountered the ancestors of all gentes of the rarious Kwäkiutl tribes, made friends with them, and filled the rivers of their countries with salmon. J. give an example of this kind of tradition. K•anikilak' met Nomas, the ancestor of the Tlauitsis. He was the first to make fish-lines of kelp to catch halibut ; therefore the Tlauitsis were the first tribe to use these. K-anikilak made friends with Nōmas, and filled the rivers of his country with salmon. He met $\bar{O}^{\prime}$ meātl, who was sitting on an island. When the latter saw K-anikilak approaching, he pointed lis first finger towards him, which perforated Kanikilak's head. Then the latter perforated Ömeatl's head in the same way. Now they knew that they were equally strong, and parted.

In some cases it is very difficult to decide whether a group of men deriving their origin from one of these ancestors is really a gens or a tribe, particularly in those cases in which the tribal name agrees with that of the ancestor of one of the gentes; for instance, Ma'malēlēk ala (collective of Mālēlēk $\cdot a l a$ ), or $W^{\prime} \overline{e n}^{\prime}$ wēk $\cdot a \bar{a}$ (collective of $W^{\prime} \overline{e n}^{\prime} k \cdot a \bar{e}$ ). d considerable number of tribal names and the majority of names of gentes are simply the collective fornn of the name of the ancestor. Others are taken from the regions inhabited by the tribe.

It appears that a tribe of the Kwankiutl must be defined as a series of gentes, whose ancestors first made their appearance in a certain welldefined region. Thas the ancestors of the Nak $o^{\prime}$ mkilisila gentes appeared on or near Cape Scott; those of the Tlatlasik-oala on or near Hope Island,
of the Kwākiutl in Hardy Bay. No other connertion between the several gentes seems to exist. We shall sea later on that the Coast Salish have the same organisation, with the exception that the gentes are named on a different principle. The latter, however, hare only very slight indications of crests, while the crests play an exceedingly important part in the life of the Kwākintl.

In order to make clear the organisation of these tribes, I will enumerate the divisions and gentes of one group of tribes.

The following four tribes which inhabit the north-eastern part of Vancouver Island form one group I enumerate the tribes, sabdivisions, and gentes of this group according to their rank.

1. Kwā'kintl, called by the Bilqula and Coast Salish, Kwakō'otl ; Fort Rapert.
Subdivisions: 1. Kuētela, so called by the tribes north of Vancouver Island.
Gentes: 1, Māa'mtakyila. 2, Kwōkwàkum. 3, Gyē'qsem. 4, Lā'alaqsent'aiō. 5, Sis'sintlaè.
2. $\mathrm{K}^{\prime} \mathrm{o}^{\prime}$ mōyne (=rich people). War name: Kuéqa (=murderers).
Gềntes: 1, Kwōkwâ'knm. 2, Hā'anatlinō. 3, - Yaai'hak'Emè (=crab). 4, Hāailakyawè or Lâ'gsē. 5, Gyìgyilk-am.
3. Walaskwakintl =the great Kwākiutl.

Gentes: 1, Ts'ents'ennk'aiō. 2, Gyē'qsem. 3, Wa'ulipōè. 4, K'ōmkyūtis ( $=$ the rich ride).
2. Mamalēlek ${ }^{\prime}$ 'la. East of Alert Bay.

Gentes: 1, Te'mtemtlets. 2, Wē'ōmask'am. 3, Wālas. 4, Mā'malēlek $\cdot a m$.
3. Ne'mkic, $\mathrm{K} \cdot \mathrm{a}$ matsin Lake and Nimkish River.

Gentes: 1, Tvētsētloa'lak'amaē. 2, Tlātel'ā'min. 3, Gyi'gyitk'am. 4, Si'sintlaē. 5, Nē'nelky'ēnoq.
4. Tlauitsis, Cracroft and Turner Islands.

Gentes: 1, Sísintlaē. 2, Nūnemasek âlis. 3, Tlētlkeēt. 4, Gyi'gyilk am.
It remains to describe briefly their crests. Every gens has certain tales in which the reason for their using these crests is explained. I shall confine myself in this place to a list of crests of the tribes of Fort Rupert.

1. Māa'mtakyila: Carvings: Thunder-bird, crane, grizzly bear, raven, sun. Mask : Mā'takyila, sun.
2. Kwōkwā'kum : Ancestor, Tlā'kooki'la. Posts: Grizzly bear on top of crane, thunder-bird, crane, sun.
3. Gyéqsem: Crane on top of a man's head.
4. Lā'alaqsent'aiō: Delphinus orca with man's body.
5. Se'ntlaè : San.
6. Hāailikyawè: Large head-ring with raven head attached to it. Heraldic columns: Tsōnō'k•oa, grizzly bear, thander-bird; Sísiutl, crane, raven.
7. Kwōkwā'kam. Ancestor, Nō'lis. Dancing utensil: Bear with beaver tail. Post: Sea-lion. Heraldic column: Pole, man on top of it.
8. Hā'anatlinō. Mask: Man, on top of whom moon and eagle. Posts : Bear, thander-bird.
9. Tsentr•'aiō. Post: Tsentk'aiō (a species of eagle). Beams: Sealion. Post : Ts'e'nHk'aio. Heraldic column : A little man with a thick belly.
10. Ggéqsem. Heraldic column : Long pole, the base of which rests on a man, on top of which stands a crane, its beak turned downward, and a double-headed snake (Sisintl).

This very fragmentary list shows that each gens uses certain carvings for certain proposes. The details of the carvings of their houses are prescribed by the legendary description of the honse of the ancestor, and so are their maska and their heraldic columns. I would call attention to the important fact that the dincing implements and the dances themselves belong to the crest of the tribe, or, mone properly speaking, to the customs and carvings to which the gens is entitled.

The distinction of what constitutes a gens and what a tribe is still more difficult among the Coast Salish. Their legends are very much like those of the Kwākiutl. They tell of fabulous ancestors who descended from heaven and bailt honses. From these a certain group of families, who always inhabit one village, derive their origin. They call themselves from the place at which their village stands, or which they claim as their original home. Whenever they leave their home, they take the name of their old village to the new place, although the name is generally a geographical one, taken from certain peculiarities of the locality. For instance, the name Tsime'nes means ' where the landing is close by the house,' an epithet that was well adapted to their former village at the moath of Cowitchin River, but not to their new bome at Chimenes. Many such instances might be enumerated. Some of these gentes have certain prerogatives and certain carvings, bat these are of very little importance, when compared to those of the K wàkiutl, among whom they exert a ruling influence over their whole life. The Snanaimuq, for instance, have the following gentes: Tē'wetqen, Yéceqen, K -oltsi'owotl, Qsâ'loqul, Anuénes. Among these only the first and the second are allowed to use masks, which have the shape of beavers, ducks, or salmon. Each gens has its own proper names.

I have so far stated only in a very general way that the northern tribes have a maternal, the southern a paternal organisation. It remains to give some more details on this important sulbject. One of the main facts is, that the phratries, viz. gentes of the Tlingit, Haida, Tsimshian, and Héiltsuk', are exogamous, not only among each tribe, bat throughout, the whole region. A member of the eagle gens of the Héiltsnk', for instance, cannot marry a member of the eagle phratry of the Tlingit. Those gentes are considered identical which have the same crest. I do not know whether any such law prevails in the case of marriages between the Kwākiutl and Hēiltsuk', which, however, seem to be of very rare occurrence. Neither was I able to arrive at a fully satisfactory conclusion regarding the question whether marriages inside a gens of the Kwākiutl are absolutely prohibited, bat I believe that such is the case. This difficulty arises from the fact that the Kwākiutl considers himself as belonging half to his mothers, half to his father's gens, while he uses the crist of his wife. I do not know of a single instance of a Kwàkiutl marrying a member of his own gens. The Salish gentes, for instance those of the $\mathrm{Sk} \cdot \mathrm{q}^{\mathbf{o}}$ mic, are not exogamous, bat I am not quite positive whether this is true in all cases.

1 do not intend in the present chipter to discass the castoms refer-
ring to birth, marriage, and death, all of which have reference to the social organisation of these tribes, and which help to gain a better understanding of this organisation. It will be sufficient to mention a few facts gleaned from these customs which have special reference to the questions under discussion.

The members of a gens are obliged to assist each other on every nccasion, bat particularly when heavy payments are to be made to other gentes. Instances of this kind will be found later on in the description of the proceedings at the occasion of the building of new bouses and at burials. It is a very remarkable fact that the gens of the male line has to do certain services at such opportanities which are not paid by the individual bat by the geas. Thas a gens is not permitted to touch the hody of one of its members; the burial is to be arranged by the gens to which the deceased's father belongs. This solidarity of the gens is principally found among the northern tribes, which are in the maternal stage. Among the same tribes mothers' sisters are considered and called mothers, fathers' brothers, fathers, while there exist separate terms for mothers' brothers and fathers' sisters.

It is a noteworthy fact that the Hēiltsak• and the Kwākiatl, who speak dialects of the same language, differ fundamentally in regard to their social organisation. I am inclined to believe that the $n$ atriarchate of the Heiltsuk is due to the influence of the Tsimshian, with whom they have frequently intermarried; and upon whom the Hēiltsuk- hare had a considerable influence. But the marriage ceremonies of the Kwākiutl seem to show that originally matriarchate prevailed also among them. The hasband always assumes, a short time after marriage, his father-in-law's name and crest, and thus becomes a member of his wife's clan. From him this crest descends upon his children; the daughters retain it, bat his sons, on marrying, lose it, adopting that of their wives. Thas the descent of the crest is practically in the female line, every unmarried man having his mother's crest; but still we cannot call this state matriarchate proper, as the father is the bead of the family, as he gives up his own crest for that of his wife. This law is carried so far that a chief who has no daughters marries one of his sons to another chief's son, the latter thas acquiring his crest. By this means the extinction of gentes is prevented. It seems, however, that the father's gens is not entirely given up, for the natives frequently use carvings of both gentes promiscuonsly, but certain parts of the father's gens, to which I shall refer presently, are excluded from this use. The following instance, which came under my personal obserration, will show the customs of the Kwākintl regarding this point. K'ömena'kula, chief of the gens Gyi'gyilk am, of the tribe Tlatlasik•oala, has the heraldic column of that gens, and the double-headed snake for his crest. In dances he uses the latter, but chiefly the attributes of the raven gens. His mother belonged to the gens Nunemasek alis, of the Tlau'itsis; hence he wears the mask of that gens. He had an only danghter, who, with her hasband, lived with him. She died, and her husband is the present owner of the heraldic column of the gens. The son of this daughter, at present a boy seven years of age, is the future chief of the gens.

Among the Salish there is no trace of matriarchal institutions. The child belongs to the father's gens, the eldest son inheriting bis rank and name.

Closely connected with the gentes of the Kwākiatl are their secret societies, each of which has certain characteristic dancing implements. They are obtained by marriage in the same way in which the crest is obtained. There is, however, one restriction to the acquiring of the right to become a member of the secret society. The person who is to acquire it must be declared worthy by the tribe assembled in council. Not until this is done is the man allowed to marry the girl from whose father the right of being initiated is to be acquired. This is even true regarding the 'medicine men.' The emblems of these secret societies are rings of red cedar-bark, of various designs. The connection of the gentes and these institutions may be seen from the legend 'Hélikilikila and Lōtlemak $\cdot$,', which was told on p. 29.1

Although a few of the tribes inhabiting the country adjoining that of the Kwakiutl have secret societies of the same character among them they are in no way connected with the gens. This fact, as well as the difference in the character of the legends of the gentes, proves that the social organisation of these groups of tribes is of entirely different origin. The southern groups derive their origin from a fabulous ancestor who is either himself the totem or to whose adventures the totem refers. The first is the case in the gens Si'sintlae, which derives its origin from the sun, Ts'e'nts'enhk''aiō of the Walaskwakintl, which derives its origin from the eagle, and others. In the majority of cases the crest refers to adventures of the ancestor. In the northern groups we observe a pure animal totem, but the animal is not considered the ancestor of the gens bearing its name. The crest always refers to adventures of one of the ancestors.

## Government and Laf.

The people of this country are divided into three classes: common people, middle class, and chiefs. While the last form a group by themselves, the members of the class forming the highest nobility, children of middle-class people are born common people, and remain so until they become members of a secret society, or give a great feast and take a name. All along the coast the giving away of presents is considered a means of attaining social distinction. The chief has numerous prerogatives, although his influence upon the members of the tribe is comparatively small. I am best acquainted with his claims among the Tsimshian, but it seems probable that these institutions are much alike among the various peoples. He has to carry ont the decisions of the council; more particularly, he has to declare peace and war. His opinion must be asked by the tribe in all important events. He decides when the winter village is to be left, when the fishing begins, \&c. The first'fish, the first berries, \&c. are given to him. It is his duty to begin all dances. He must be invited to all festivities, and when the first whistles are blown in winter, indicating the beginning of the dancing season, he receives a certain tribute. People of low rauk must not step up directly to a chief, whose seat is in the rear of the house, but must approach him going along the walls of the house.

The highest in rank among all Tsimshian chiefs is the one of the Gyispaqlà'ots tribe. His name is invariably Legi'eq. He is considered

[^8]the noblest, becanse a number of secret societies are only permitted to his family and tribe. This is accounted for by the fact that these secret societies were acquired by marriage from the Gyit'amā't. Tradition says--and it is undoubtedly correct-that a woman of the Gyispaqla'ots tribe eloped with a Gyit'amā't chief, to whose gens these dances belonged. After her return the woman was given the name G'andema'qtl ( $=$ only in eloping ascending mountain). The name Legi'eq is a Gyit'amā't name. It is a privilege of the Gyispaqlâots to trade with the Gyitksa'n; and they kept ap this privilege successfully even against the Hudson Bay Company until the latter parchased it from them in 1886. The Gyit'Endâ chiefs are relatives of those of the Gyispaqlà'ots. They share their privileges, and bear the same names, the one Legi'eq excepted.

The Gyitqā'tla are considered higher in rank than any other of the tribes of the Tsimshian proper. They have the same secret societies which the Gyispaqlâ'ots and Git'Endâ' have. They acquired them through inter-marriage from the Gyitlo'p and Héiltsuk: Only quite recently the Haida acquired them from the Gyitqa'tla.

The Gyits'umrä'lon are not of Tsimshian origin. Six generations (that is, about 150 years) ago a number of Tongas (Tlingit), men and women, emigrated from Alaska in consequence of continued wars, and settled on the brook of Gyits'umrä'lon. They married a number of Tsimshian women and men, among whom the names Rataqä' $q$ and Astoé'né are mentioned. For a considerable time they continued to speak Tlingit, but finally were assimilated by the Tsimshian. Their descendants are still called Gunhō'ot (runaways).

It is becoming to a chief to be prond and to leave his memory to his descendants. Therefore the Legi'eq, who ruled 150 years ago (the sixth back), had his figure painted on a vertical precipice on Nass River. A series of coppers is standing under his figure. Since that time the place is called Wulgyilegstqald'amptk (where self on written).

Seven generations ago Nēswiba'sk (grandfather great wind), a chief at Meqtlak'qā'tla, had his figure carved on a rock on an island near Meqtlak $\quad$ ā'tla. He lay down, had his outline marked, and the carving completed in a single night.

The Gyitg a'ata of Grenville Channel are subjects of the chief of the Gyitwulgyà'ts. They have to pay a tribute of fish, oil, berries, and skins every year. The Gyitlà'op are subjects of the chief of the Gyitqa'tla.

When a chief dies the chieftaincy devolves upon his younger brother, then upon his nephew, and, if there is none, upon his niece. Only, if a chief's family dies out the head man of his crest can become chief. This is the only case in which a middle-class man can advance to the rank of a chief. The chief's property, as well as that of others, is inherited first by the nephews; if there are none, then by the deceased's mother or aunt. A woman's property is inherited by her children.

There are very few common people, for whoever can afford it lets his child enter a secret society immediately after birth, by proxy. The child thus becomes a middle-class man. The more feasts are given by him the higher becomes his rank, but no member of the middle class can ever become a member of the chief class. The chief's daughter on reaching maturity must grind down her teeth by chewing a pebble of jade (see p. 12). So far as I know, this is the only deformation of the body which is confined to one class only.

When a family is liable to die out the father is allowed to adopt one
of his danghters, who then receives a name belonging to his crest. On this occasion a great festival is given. A man cannot adopt more than one child at a time.

The council is composed of middle-class men. Nobody who has not taken a name, or who is not a menber of a secret society, is allowed to take part in it. The mother's brother represents his nephews. A woman is only admitted if she is the head of a family.

The council decides all important questions concerning the tribe, and is the conrt which judges criminals. Those who are found gailty of sorcery are tied up and placed at the edge of low water, and are left there to be drowned. According to legends, such people were frequently left alone in the winter village to starve to death. If a man does not observe the prescribed rules daring dances he is tied and brought before the conncil. If nobody speaks in his favour he is killed, else he is punistied by being made a slave, or by heary payments. All crimes can be atnned for by sufficient payments. If such are not made it is the daty of the nearest relatives to take revenge.

The coast tribes have always been great traders, and they had a certain currency. Dentalia, skins, and slaves were standards of value. For less valuable property marmot-skins sewed together served as currency. The Tsimshian used to exchange olachen oil and carvings of mountaingoat horn for canoes. The Chitlk at sold their beautiful blankets; the Heiltsuk', canoes; while the southern tribes furnished principally slaves.

The latter were in every respect the property of their masters, who were allowed to kill them, to sell them, or to give them their liberty. Children of slaves were also slaves.

Strangers are always received kindly and with much ceremony. Among the tribes who still adhere to their old customs they are offered the host's daughter while they remain.

So far as I am aware, the institutions of the Haida, Tlingit, and Hēiltsuk are much the same as those described here. I did not learn any details, as I did not visit these tribes in their homes.

The following observations hold good for the Kwäkintl and Coast Salish, as well as for the northern group of tribes. Polygamy is not of rare occurrence, although generally each man has only one wife. The first wife is of higher rank than those married at a later date. Women must not take part in the councils and feasts, except when they are heads of families (or, among the Kwākiutl, chief's daughters); but the husband takes home from the feast a dish of all the various kinds of food that were served. The dish must be returned the same night.

The principal work of the women is gathering berries and clams, drying fish, and preparing the meals. They weave mats, blankets, and hats. The men, on the other hand, hant and fish, they fetch fael-if large logs are wanted-and build houses and canoes. They also make the carvings and paintings.

The property of the whole gens is vested in the chief, who considers the salmon rivers, berry patches, and coast strips, in which the gens has the sole right, as his property. Houses belong to the man who erected the framework. They are always inhabited by members of one gens? Canoes, fishing-gear, \&c. are personal property. Women own 'boxes; dishes, and other household goods.

The $K w a \bar{a} k i u t l$.-As among these tribes paternal institations take the place of maternal institutions, many laws are found that are not known
to the nortkern group of tribes. If such is possible, the rank of each man is here still more exactly fixed than among their neighbours. The rank is determined by the gens to which a man belongs, by the feasts he has given, and by the secret societies to which he belongs. In the list of gentes on page 31 I have enumerated the Kwākiatl gentes according to their social standing. In great festivals celebrated for the purpose of acquiring rank by giving away property, the noblest guests sit in the rear part of the hoase, nearest the fire, and the lower in rank the farther back they sit. When only one row is formed those lowest in rank sit nearest the door.

The affairs of the whole tribe are discussed in council, in which only men participate. Before the opening of the discussion four songs are sung and four courses are served. Then the public affairs are discussed in long and elaborate speeches, delivered principally by the chiefs. In time of peace there is no chief who has acknowledged authority over the whole tribe, bat each gens has its own chief. A certain superionity of social standing is acknowledged in those who have given a great donation feast. In times of war a war chief is elected.

The chief represents his gens, and carries out the decision of the council. Except on delivering speeches, he does not speak to people of low rank, bat converses with them through messengers.

If a single person is offended, the gentes of both his father and mother are obliged to come to his help. Thus the long war between the Coast Salish and Lekwiltok originated. Formerly these wars were of so frequent occurrence that the villages all along the coast were protected by stockades.

The institations of the Coast Salish and of the Kwäkiutl are pretty much the same, except that the former have a pure patriarchate, and the child inherits his father's rank and property.

Among the Sk•qōmic, for instance, the chieftaincy devolves upon the chief's son. If there is only a daughter his grandson is the saccessor. If there are no children a new chief is elected from among his gens. If the saccessor is a young boy a representative is elected who acts as chief until the boy is grown up and has assumed a name. If a man dies his wife inherits all the property and keeps it until her children are grown up. After the death of the husband she gives a potlatch to his memory.

Among all the tribes heretofore described each gens owns a certain district and certain fishing privileges. Among the Tlingit, Haida, and Tsimshian each gens in each village has its own fishing-ground; its monntains and valleys, on which it has the sole right of hunting and picking berries; its rivers in which to fish salmon, and its hoase-sites. For this reason the houses of one gens are always grouped together. I do not know of any tradition which accounts for this fact, or of any other foundation of their claim. The Kwākiutl, who have the same distribution of land among the varions gentes, account for this fact by saying that the ancestor of each gens descended from heaven to the particular region now owned by his descendants. Later on K-anikilak', the son of the deity (see p. 30), in his wanderings encountered these ancestors, - andzave them the country they inhabited as their property, filling at the same time their rivers with salmon. The Coast Salish derive their claims to certain tracts of land in the same way from the fact that the ancestor of each gens came down to a certain place, or that he settled. there after the great flood. The right of a gens to the place where it
originated cannot be destroyed. It may acquire by war or by other events territory originally belonging to foreign tribes, and leave its home to be taken up by others; the right of fishing, hunting, and gathering berries in their old home is rigidly maintained. A careful study shows that nowhere the tribe as a body politic owns a district, but that each gens has its proper hunting and fishing grounds, upon which neither members of other tribes nor of other gentes mast intrude except by special permission. It would be an interesting and important object of stady to inquire into the territorial rights of each gens, for such a study would undoubtedly throw much light upon the ancient history of these peoples. . These rigid laws in regard to the holding of land by the gentes are very important in the past history of the Indians of British Columbia, and are of prime importance in their present relations to the white settlers.

One of the most complicated and interesting institutions of these tribes is the so-called potlatch-the custom of paying debts and of acquiring distinction by means of giving a great feast and making presents to all guests. It is somewhat difficult to understand the meaning of the potlatch. I should compare its most simple form to our custom of invitation or making presents and the obligations arising from the offering, not from the acceptance, of such invitations and presents. Indeed, the system is almost exactly analogous, with the sole exception that the Indian is more anxious to outdo the first giver than the civilised European, who, however, has the same tendency, and that what is custom with us is law to the Indian. Thus by continued potlatches each man becomes necessarily the debtor of the other. According to Indian ideas any moral or material harm done to a man can be made good by an adequate potlatch. Thas if a man was ridiculed by another he gives away a number of blankets to his friends, and thas regains his former standing. I remember, for instance, that the grandson of a chief in Hope Island by unskilful management of his little canoe was upset near the beach and had to wade ashore. The grandfather felt ashamed on account of the boy's accident, and gave away blankets to take away the occasion of remarks on this subject In the same way a man who feels injured by another will destroy a certain amount of property; then his adversary is compelled to do the same, else a stain of dishonour would rest upon him. This custom may be compared to a case when a member of civilised society gives away to no good purpose a considerable amount of money ostentatiously in order to show his superiority over a detested neighbour. I adduce these comparisons to show that the custom is not so difficult to understand, and is founded on psychical causes as active in our civilised society as among the barbarous natives of British Columbia. A remarkable feature of the potlatch is the custom of giving feasts going beyond the host's means. The procedure at such occasion:; is also exactly regulated. The foundation of this custom is the solidarity of the individual and the gens, or even the tribe, to which he belongs. If an individual gains social distinction his gens participates in it. If he loses in respect the stain rests also on the gens. Therefore the gens contributes to the payments to be made at a festival. If the feast is given to foreign tribes the whole tribe contributes to these payments. The method by which this is done has been well set forth by Dr. G. M. Dawson ('Trans. Roy. Soc. Can.' 1887, page 80). The man who intends to give the potlatch first borrows as many blankets as he needs
from both his friends and from those whom be is going to invite to th. feast. Everyone lends him as many as he can afford, i.e. according to his rank. At the feast these are given away, each man receiving the more the higher his rank is. All those who have received anything at the potlatch have to repay the double amount at a later day, and this is used to repay those who lent blankets. At each such feast the man who gives it acquires a new and more honourable name.

Among the Snanaimuq I observed the following customs: The chief's son adopts, some time after his father's death, the latter's name. For this purpose he invites all the neighbouring tribes to a potlatch. The Snanaimuq have a permanent scaffold erected in front of their houses, on which the chief stands during the potlatch, assisted by two slaves, who distribute the presents he gives away among his guests, who stand and sit in the street. As it is necessary to give a great festival at the assumption of the chief's name, the new chief continues sometimes for years and years to accumulate wealth for the parpose of celebrating this event. At the festival his father's name is given him by four chiefs of foreign tribes.

I will give here some details on the wars of this tribe. The warriors were thoroughly trained. They were not allowed to eat while on the warpath. Before setting ont on such an expedition they painted their faces red. When near the village they intended to attack, the party divided; one half hid in the woods behind the village, while the others watched in their canoes. When the latter gave a sign both parties attacked the village. When successful, the men were killed, the women and children carried off as slaves. The heads of the slain were cut off, taken home, and planted on poles in front of the houses.

It may be of interest to hear the history of one of these wars that raged for many years about the middle of this centary as told by a chief of the Snanaimuq. K•ä'Elitc, a chief of the Si'ciatl, had a daughter, who was the wife of a chief of the Snanaimuq. Once upon a time the former tribe was attacked by the Lé'kwiltok', and many men had been killed. Then Koä'elite sent to the chief of the Snanaimuq and called apon him for help. They set out jointly and met the Lé'kwiltok' at Qu'sam (Salmon River). In the ensaing struggle the Si'ciatl and Snanaimuq. were victorions, but many of their warriors were killed. They brought home many heads of their enemies. The friends of the Snanaimuq, however, were sad when they heard of the death of so many of their friends, and they resolved to take revenge. They all, the Pēnä'leqats, T'ä'teke, Yeqo'ląos, Qelä'ltq, Çek emē'n, Snōnō'os, Snanaimuq, and Síciatl, gathered and made war upon the Lékwiltok. Another battle was fought at $\mathrm{Qu}^{\prime}$ sam, in which the Lé ${ }^{\prime}$ kwiltok' were atterly defeated, and in which many slaves were captured. Now the Lé'kwiltok• called upon their northern neighbours for belp. They were greatly reduced in numbers; of the Tlaa'luis only three were left. Then these tribes went south to take revenge, and in a number of battles fought with the southern tribes, who had meanwhile been joined by the tribes of Puget Sound. While the war was thas raging with alternating success, part of the tribes on Vancouver Island had removed to the upper part of Cowitchin River, others to Nanaimo River, still others to the mainland. Posts were continally maintained to keep the tribes informed of movements of the Le'kwiltok' and their allies. Once they had unexpectedly made an expedition southward before the tribes were able to gather. They had gone past Fraser River to Puget Sound and hall massacred the tribes of that region.-

Meanwhile those assembled on Cowitchin River had sent word to the tribes of Fraser River and summoned them to come to the island. They told them to pass through Cowitchin Gap and to look on the shallow beach on the north side of that channel for a signal. They obeyed. Meanwhile all the tribes on the island had assembled and determined to await the return of the Lé'kwiltok in Maple Bay. To indicate this they erected a pole, sprinkled with the blood of a blue jay, at the beach in Cowitchin Gap, and made it point towards Maple Bay. Thas they all assembled. Early one morning they heard the Lē'kwiltok• coming. They sang songs of victory. Uuexpectedly they were attacked. Almost all of them were slaughtered, their canoes sunk, and women and children enslaved. A few reached the shore, but were starved near Comox. This was the last great battle of the war. The narrator's father made peace with the northern tribes. He was the first to settle again on Gabriola Island. He emancipated his slaves. When peace was made the chiefs made their peoples iutermarry.

I have no observations to offer on the government or laws of the Katona'qa, except that usually the chief is succeeded by his son. If the latter is not considered worthy the new chief is elected from among his family.

## Ccstoms regarding Birth, Marriage, and Death.

Krause gives the following reports of the customs of the Tlingit observed at the birth of a child. He says that, according to Kemiaminow, the women are assisted by midwives. After the child is born the young mother has to remain for ten days in a small hut, which is erected for this purpose, and in which the child was born. The new-born infant is washed with cold fresh water and kept in a cradle filled with moss. It is not given the breast until all the contents of its stomash (which are considered the cause of disease) are removed by vomiting, which is promoted by pressing the stomach. A month after birth the mother is said to leave her hut for the first time; then she washes her child and puts on new clothing. For five days after birth the mother does not partake of any food, but drinks a little lakewarm water.

Among the Tsimshian I observed the following customs: A woman who is with child is not allowed to eat tails of salmon, as else the confinement would be hard. She must rise early in the morning and leare the house before any of the other inhabitants leave it. Before the child is born the father must stay outside his house, and must wear ragged clothing. After the child is born he must abstain from eating any fat food, particularly porcupine, seal, and whale. The mother is confined in a small house or in a separate room.

Numerous ceremonies must be observed when girls reach maturity. When about thirteen or fourteen years old they begin to practise fasting, eating in the afternoon only, as a very severe fasting is prescribed at the time when they reach maturity. It is believed that if they had any food in their stomachs at this time they would have bad luck in all future. They must remain alone and unseen in their room or in a porch for ten days, and abstain from food and drink. For four days they are not even allowed a drop of water. For a fortnight the girl is not permitted to chew her own food. If she desires to have two or three boys when married, two or three men chew her food for her ; in the other case, two or three
women. At the end of this fasting they are covered with mais and held over a fire. It is believed that by this ceremony her children are made to be healthy; if it were omitted they would die, even if they grow up to be a few years old. The girl is not allowed to look at fresh salmon and olachen for a whole year, and has to abstain from eating it. Her head is always covered with a small mat, and she must not look at men. She must not lie down, but always sit, propped ap between boxes and mats. Her mother's clan give a great feast and many presents to her father's clan. At this feast her ears are perforated, and she is given ear-ornameuts. When a chief's daughter reaches maturity she is given a jade pebble, which she must bite antil her teeth are completely worn duwn in the middle. When the festival was held slaves were often given away or killed.

I will mention in this place that women when drinking for the first time after marriage mast turn their cap four times in the same direction in which the sun is moving, and drink very little only. The perforation of the ears is repeated at later occasions, and every time a new hole is made a new festival is celebrated.

After a death has occurred, the relatives of the deceased have their hair cut short and their faces blackened. They cover their heads with ragged and soilcd mats, and go four times around the body singing mourning songs. They must speak bat little, confining themselves to answering questions, as it is believed that they would else become chatterboxes. Until the body is buried they must fast, eating only a very little at night. Women of the gentes to which the deceased did not belong act as wailers, and are paid for their work, the whole gens of the deceased contribating to the payment. In wailing the women must keep their eyes closed. The gens to which the deceased person's father belongs must bary him. The body lies in state for a number of days. It is washed immediately after death, placed upright and painted with the crest of the gens of the dead person. His dancing ornaments and weapons are placed by his side. Then the body is put into a box which is tied up with lines made of elk-skins. These are furnished by the gens of the deceased, and kept as a payment by the other gens. The bodies, except those of shamans, are burnt. The box is placed on the funeral pile, the lines of elk-skin are taken off and kept by the father's gens. A hole is cut into the bottom of the box and the pile is lighted. Before all is burnt the heart is taken out of the body and buried. It is believed that if it were burnt, all relations of the deceased would die. The fatker's gens, besides receiving the lines, is paid with marmot-skins and blaukets. The nearest relations mourn for a whole year. Some time after the burial a memorial post is erected and a memorial festival celebrated. If many members of one family die in quick succession, the survivors lay their fourth fingers on the edge of the box in which the corpse is deposited and cut off the first joint 'to cut off the deaths' (gyidig'ots). The bodies of shamans are buried in caves or in the woods. These customs are common to the Tlingit, Haida, and Tsimshian.

- Bilqula.-Among the Bilqula I noted the following castoms: They have professional midwives to assist the woman, who is delivered in a small house bailt for this purpose. The child is washed in warm water. The mother mast remain for ten days in her room. Father and mother are not allowed to go near the river for a year, else the salmon would take offence.

Girls when reaching maturity must stay in their bedroom, where they have a fireplace of their own. They are not allowed to descend to the floor, and do not sit by the fire of the family. After a while they may leave their room, bat only through a hole cut in the floor (the houses standing on piles), through which they must also enter. They are allowed to pick berries, but for a whole year they mast not come near the river or the sea. They must not driuk more than is absolutely necessary. They must not eat salmon of the season, else they would lose their senses, or their mouths would be transformed into long beaks. They must not eat snow, which is much liked by the Indians, nor must they chew gum.
$K w a ̈ k i u t l$. .-There are the same restrictions regarding the place in which women are confined and regarding the food of girls reaching maturity. The marriage customs are of peculiar interest on acconnt of the transition from maternal to paternal institations that may be observed here. If a young man wishes to marry a girl, he must send messengers to the girl's father and ask his permission. If the father accepts the suitor, he may demand fifty or more blankets, according to his rank, to be paid at once. He demands double that number to be paid after three months. After this second payment has been made, the young man is allowed to live with his wife in his father-in-law's house. When he goes to live there the young man gives a feast to the whole tribe, without giving away any blankets, and receives from his father-in-law fifty blankets or more. At the same time his father-in-law states when he intends to refund the rest. During the feast, in which the young wife takes part, she tells her father that her husband wishes to have his carvings and dances. Her father is obliged to give them to him, and promises to do so at a future occasion. After three months more the young man pays his father-in-law 100 blankets to gain permission to take his wife to his own home. The blankets which he has given to his father-in-law are repaid by the latter with interest. At the appointed time the woman's father gives a great feast to the whole tribe. He steps forward carrying his copper, the emblem of richness and power, and hands it to his son-inlaw, thas giving him his name, carvings, and dances. The young man has to give blankets to every guest attending the feast; the nobler the guest is, the more blankets he receives.

The dowry of the bride consists of bracelets made of beaver-toes and copper; so-called 'button-blankets,' copper-plates, and the gyi'serstâl. The last is a heavy board shaped like one of the lids of Indian boxes. Its front is set with sea-otter teeth. It is said to reprefent the human lower jaw, and I was told that it indicates the right of the hasband to command his wife to speak or to be silent as he may desire.

The bride receives her boxes and other household goods from her parents. After the marriage she makes presents of dishes, spoons, trays, and similar objects to the whole tribe in behalf of her husband, in order to show his liberality. If the woman should intend to separate from her husband, and to return to her parents, her father must repay twofold all he has received from his son-in-law. If there should be a child, he has to repay him threefold. This third part becomes the property of the child. Frequently this is only a sham divorce, entered into to give an opportunity to the father-in-law to show his liberality and wealth. As soon as he has paid the hasband, the latter repurchases his wife. I was
told
know
A
go ou
Fig.
told that the $g y \bar{\imath}^{-1}$ 'serstâl is not used by the Lékwiltok. It is certainly not known to the Coast Salish.

Among the Tlatlasik oala and Awiky'énok the gens of the young man go out to meet his bride. They connect four boats by long boards and per-

Fig. 3.
 form a dance on this platform. The dance is called Ia'tiati by the Tlatlasik'oala. Among the Awiky'énok another dance is performed, in which a woman has the chief part. She carries a carved piece of wood about a foot and a half long, of the shape shown by the figure, and set with haliotis shells. Besides her, four masked dancers take part in the dance. They are called Winoquē'lak', Yaiauā'lak amé, Aiqumā'lakila, and Yaiawinō'akila. Unfortunately I was nnable to understand the meaning of their dance.
The dead are put into boxes and buried either in a separate barial ground or deposited in the higher branches of trees. The tribes living at the northern end of Vancouver Island have separate burial grounds for chiefs and for common or middle-class people. The box containing the body is placed in a small house similar to those of the Tlingit and Haida. The house is covered with blankets, and strips of blanket are fastened to poles erected near the grave or to lines drawn from one tree to the other. Memorial columns, showing the crest of the tribe, are erected near the graves. Large spoons are placed alongside the houses, and are filled with food when the body is buried. At the same time food is barnt on the beach. If the body is hang up in a tree, the lower branches are carefully removed to make it inaccessible. Sometimes chiefs are buried in canoes. The Koskimo frequently bury their dead in a cave. The graveyards are generally situated on small islands or grounds near the village, and are one of the most remarkable sights on the coast, on account of the great display of colours and carvings.

The regulations referring to the mourning period are very severe. In case of the death of hasband or wife, the survivor has to observe the following rules: For four days after the death the survivor must sit motionless, the knees drawn up toward the chin. On the third day all the inhabitants of the village, including children, must take a bath. On the fourth day some water is heated in a wooden kettle, and the widow or widower drips it upon his head. When he becomes tired of sitting motionless, and must move, he thinks of his enemy, stretches his legs slowly four times, and draws them up again. Then his enemy must die. During the following sixteen days he must remain on the same spot, bat he may stretch out his legs. He is not allowed, however, to move his lands. Nobody must speak to him, and whosoever disobeys this command will be punished by the death of one of his relatives. Every fourth day he takes a bath. He is fed twice a day by an old woman at the time of low water, with salmon canght in the preceding year, and given to him in the dishes and spoons of the deceased. While sitting so his mind is wandering to and fro. He sees his house and his friends as though far, far away. If in his visions he sees a man near by, the latter is sare to die at no distant day; if he sees him very far away, he will continue to live long. After the sixteen days have passed, he may lie down, but not stretch ont. He takes a bath every eighth day. At the end of the first month he takes off his clothing, and dresses the stamp of a tree with it. After another month has passed he may sit in a corner of the house, but for four months he must not mingle with others. He must not ase the
hnuse door, but a separate door is cut for his use. Before he leaves the house for the first time he must three times approach the door and retarn, then he may leave the house. After ten months his hair is cut short, and after a year the mourning is at an end. At present the Indians abstain, during the mourning, from the use of European implements.

Food is burned for the dead on the beach, sometimes in great quantities, which is intended to serve for their food. The mourners wail every morning on the beach, facing the grave. The women scratch their faces with their nails, and cut them with knives and shells.

After the chief's death a great feast is celebrated, in which the son adopts his father's name. At first nourning songs are sung, in which stones are used instead of sticks for beating time. Then the whistle Ts'ékoityala is heard, which ends their mourning and restores happiness to their minds. After a while the chief's son enters, carrying his copper plate, and, assuming his father's name, becomes the new chief.

## Coast Salish.

I am best acquainted with the castoms of the Snanaimaq, which are probably almost identical with those of the other tribes of this group, the Çatlō'ltq excepted, whose customs are more alike to those of the Kwākiutl than to those of the other Coast Salish.

It is the custom of the Snanaimuq that, if a woman is to be delivered, all the women are invited to come, and to rub cedar-bark, which is used for washing and bedding the babe. Two women, the wives of chiefs, wash the new-born babe. All those who do any work on behalf of the mother or chiid are paid with pieces of a mountain-goat blanket. The mother must not eat anything but dried salmon, and is not allowed to go down to the river. The children are not named until they are several years old. Then all the gentes of the tribe are invited, and at the ensuing festival the child receives the name of his grandfather or that of another old member of the gens. Names once given are not changed, except when that of a chief is assumed by his son.

The man who wants to marry a girl goes into the house of her parents, and sits down, without speaking a word, close by the door. There he sits four days, without eating any food. For three days the girl's parents abuse him in every way, but on the fourth day they feign to be moved by his perseverance, and the girl's mother gives him a mat to sit on. In the evening of the fourth day the girl's parents call on the chief of the gens, and request his wife to invite the young man to sit down near the fire. Then he knows that the parents will give their consent to the marriage. A meal is cooked; some food is served to the young man, and some is sent to his parents in order to advise them of the consent of the girl's family. The latter, on receiving the food, accept it, and turn at once to cooking a meal. They fill the empty dishes in which the food was sent, and retarn them to the girl's parents. Then both families give jointly a great feast. The joung man's parents load their boat with mountain-goat blankets and other valuable presents, and leave the landing-place of their house and land at that of the bride's house. They are accompanied by the members of their gens. Meanwhile the bride's gens has assembled in her house. The chiefs of the groom's gens deliver the presents to the bride's parents, making a long and elaborate speech. In return, the bride's parents present these chiefs
with a few blankets, which are handed to them by the chiefs of their gens. Then the groom's gens is invited to partake in a great feast. After these ceremonies are ended, the young man and his gens return to the boat, and stay for a few hours on the water. Meanwhile the bride is intrusted to the care of the highest chief of her gens, who takes her by the hand, carrying a rattle elabnrately carved, of mountain-goat horn, in the other. Besides this, he carries a mat for the bride to sit on. Then the highest chief of the other gens takes her from the hands of the former, and leads her into the boat. The presents given by the parents of the young man are restored, later on, in the same proportion by the bride's parents.

While these formal ceremonies are always observed when both partics are of high rank, in other cases, if both parents are of the same rank, the marriage is sometimes celebrated only by a feast and by a payment of the value of about forty blankets to the bride's parents by those of the groom. These are also restored later on.

If the families are of different social standing, the whole gens of those parents who are of higher rank may go to the young couple and recover the husband or wife, as the case may be. This is considered a divorce. Or the chiefs of the offended gens summon a council, and the case is settled by a payment of blankets.

The following funeral castoms are practised by the Snanaimuq. The face of the deceased is painted with red and black paint. The corpse is pat in a box, which is placed on four posts about five feet above the ground. In rare instances only the boxes are fastened in the tops of trees, which are made inaccessible by cutting off the lower branches. Members of a geus are placed near each other, near relatives sometimes in a small house, in which the boxes are enclosed. A chief's body is put in a carved box, and the front posts supporting his coffin are carved. His mask is placed between these posts. The głaves of great warriors are marked by a statue representing a warrior with a war-club. There is nothing to distinguish a shaman's grave from that of an ordinary man. The mourners mast move very slowly. They are not allowed to come near the water and eat the heads of salmon. They must cook and eat alone, and not use the fire and the dishes which other people use. Every morning they go down to the beach and wail for the dead. After the death of a soung child, the parents cut off their hair, but there is no other ceremony.

After the death of hasband or wife, the survivor must paint his legs and his blanket red. For three or four days he must not eat anything. Then three men or women give him some food, and henceforth he is allowed to eat. Twice every day he must take a bath, in which he or she is assisted by two men or women. At the end of the mourning period the red blanket is given to an old man, who deposits it in the woods.

At the death of the chief the whole tribe mourns. Four days after the death occurred the whole tribe assembles, and all take a bath, which conclades the mourning.

Kutonaqa.-I have not obtained any information regarding castoms referring to birth.

When a girl reaches maturity she must inform her mother and grandmother, who lead her to a lonely plare, or the woods, and provide her with food for about twenty days. When this food is at an end, she
returns at night to the village for more. If anybody should happen to find her whereabouts, she has to resort to another secluded place. Generally she has to shift her hiding-place four times. She must abstain from certain kinds of food in order to preserve her teeth. She mast not cat soup made of shavings from deer or elk skin, as else her skin would become an anclean complexion. She must not eat bones with marrow, heart, or kidney. An unmarried woman must eat neither breast nor tenderloin of any animal. If she should eat tenderloin of both sides of the animal, it is beliered she would give birth to twins. Neither must she eat meat lying around the obturator foramen of the pelvic bone, else an enemy's arrow wonld hit her husband in that part.

When a young man wishes to marry a girl, he has to make a certain payment to his parents-in-law. It seems there is no further ceremony connected with the marriage. After marriage the woman's parents give some presents to the young couple. The first child is often sacrificed to the sun, to secure health and happiness to the whole family. An old 'brave' is requested to give a boy his name, to make him a good warrior. Children must not eat blood and marrow, else they will become weak.

The dead are buried in an outstretched positiou. The head was probably always directed eastwards. They kill the deceased's horse and hang bis property to a tree under which his grave is. The body is given its best clothing. The mourners cat off their hair, which is buried with the body. When a warrior dies, they paint his face red, and bury him between trees which are peeled and then painted red.

Before the body is buried, they prophesy future events from the position of his bands. These are placed over the breast of the body, the left nearer the chin than the right. Then the body is covered with a skin, which after a few minutes is removed. If the hands have not changed their position, it indicates that no more deaths will occur in the same season. If they are partly closed, the number of closed fingers indicates the number of deaths. If the point of the thumb very nearly touches the point of the first finger, it indicates that these deaths will take place very soon. If both bands are firmly closed, they open the fingers one by one, and if they find beads (torn from the clothing?) in the hands, they believe that they will have good fortune. If they find dried meat in the hand, it indicates that they will have plenty of food. If both hands are closed so firmly that they cannot be opened, it indicates that the tribe will be strong and healthy and free from disease. These experiments are repeated several times.

While a few men bury the body, the mourners remain in the lodge motionless. When those who have buried the body return, they take a thornbash, dip it into a kettle of water, and sprinkle the doors of all lodges. Then the bash is broken to pieces, thrown into a kettle of water, which is drunk by the mourners. This ends the monrning ceremonies.

After the death of a woman, her children must wear until the following spring rings cut out of skin around the wrists, lower and upper arms, and around the legs. It is believed that else their bones would become weak.

## Religions.

Tlingit.-While the shamanistic practices and castoms are very much alike among the varions peoples of the North Pacific coast, their ideas aboat futare life and the great deitics deserve a separate description. The

Tlingit believe that the sonl, after death, lives in a country similar to ours. Those who hare died a violent death go to heaven, to a country ruled by Tahit; those who die by sickness (also women dying in childbed) go to a country beyond the borders of the earth, bat on the same level. It is said that the dead from both conntries join during the daytime. I beliere that this idea, which is also held by the Haida, must be ascribed to Eskimo influence. The ideas of the Tlingit regarding future life are best described in the following tales, which are told as adventures of shamans who lived about 150 or 200 years ago :

A shaman had been sick for many years. When he felt that he could not recover, and death was approaching, he asked his mother to take good care of bis dog. He died. The corpse was wrapped in furs, and on the fourth day he was buried in the graveyard of the shamans, near the beach. Every day his mother went to the little honse in which his body was deposited, bewailing his death, and burning food for him. One day the dog, who had accompanied her, began to bark, and would not be quieted. Suddenly she heard something moving in the grave, and a sound as though somebody was awaking from a long sleep. She fled, terrified, and told the people what she had heard. They went to the grave, opened it, and found that the dead had returned to life. They carried him bome, and gave him some food. Bat he felt weak, and it was not until he had slept long and soundly that he began to speak. ' Mother,' he said, 'why did not you give me to eat when I asked you? Did not you hear me? I said, "I am hangry," and nudged you. I wanted to touch your right side, but I was unable to do so. I was compelled by a magic force to stand at your left side. You did not reply, but merely touched your side, saying, "That is a bad omen." When I saw you eating, I asked you to let me take part in your meal, bat you did not answer, and without your permission I was not able to partake of any food. You said, "The fire crackles, and you threw some of your meal into it."
' When I was dead I did not feel any pain. I sat by my body, and saw how you prepared it for burial, and how you painted my face with our crest. I heard you, $O$ mother, mourning at my grave. I told yon that I was not dead, bat you did not hear me. After four days I felt as though there was no day and no night. I saw you carrying away my body, and felt compelled to accompany it, although I wished to stay in our house. I asked every one of you to give me some food, bat you threw it into the fire, and then I felt satisfied. At last I thought, "I believe I am dead, for nobody hears me, and the burnt food satisfies me," and I resolved to go into the land of the souls. Soon I arrived at a fork in the road. A much-trodden road led one way, while the other seemed to have been seldom used. I followed the former. I longed to die, and went on and on, hoping to reach the country of the deceased. At last I arrived at a steep rock, the end of the world. At the font of the rock a river flowed sluggishly. On the other side I saw a village, and recognised many of its inhabitants. I saw my grandmother and my uncle who have long been dead, and many children whom I had once tried to cure. But many of those I saw I did not know. I cried, "Oh, come, have pity upon me! Take me over to you!" But they continued to wander about as though they did not bear me. I was overcome by weariness, $\ddagger$ nd lay down. The hard rock was my pillow. I slept soundly, and when I awoke I did not know how long I had slept. I
stretched my limbs and gawned. Then the people in the village cried, "Somebody is coming! Let us go and take him across the river!" A boat came to where I stood, and took me to the village. Everyone greeted me kindly. I was going to tell them of this life, but they raised their hands and motioned me to be silent, saying, "Don't speak of these matters; they do not belong to us." They gave me salmon and berries to eat, but everything had a burnt taste, although it looked like good food; therefore I did not tonch it. They gave me water, but when I was about to drink it I found that it looked green and had a bitter taste. They told me that the river which I had crossed was formed of the tears shed by the women over the dead; therefore you must not cry until your dead friend has crossed the river.
' I thought, "I came here to die, but the spirits lead a miserable life. I will rather endure the pains my mother inflicts upon me than stay here." The spirits asked me to stay, but $\dot{I}$ was not moved by their entreaties, and left. As soon as I turned round the river had disappeared, and I found myself on a path that was seldom trodden by man. I went on and on, and saw many hands growing out of the ground, and moving towards me, as though they were asking something. Far away I saw a great fire, and close behind it a sword swinging around. When I followed the narrow path I saw many eyes, which were all fixed upon me. But I did not mind them, for I wanted to die, and I went on and on. The fire was still at a distance. At last I reached it, and then I thought, "What sball I do? My mother does not hear me. I hate the life of the spirits. I will die a violent death, and go to Tahi't." I put my head into the fire, right where the sword was swinging round. Then all of a sudden I felt cold. I heard my dog barking and my mother crying. I stretched my limbs, peeped through the walls of my little grave, and saw you, O mother, ranning away. I called my dog; he came to see me, and then you arrived and found me alive. Many would like to return from the country of the spirits, but they dread the hands, the eyes, and the fire; therefore the path is almost obliterated.'

A similar story tells of a man's visit to the upper country, which is raled by Tahī't:

A man named Ky'itl'à'c, who lived about seven generations age, killed himself. When he died he saw a ladder descending from hearen, and he ascended it. At the head of the ladder he met an old watchman, who was all black, and had curly hair (??). He asked, ' What do you want here?' When Ky'itl'a'c told him that he had killed himself, the watchman allowed him to pass. Soon he discovered a large honse, and saw a kettle standing in front of it. In the house he saw Tahi't, who beckoned him to come in. He called two of his people (who are called Kyēwak-ā'ō) and ordered them to show Ky'itl'ä'c the whole country. They led him to the Milky Way, and to a lake in which two white geese were swimming. They gave bim a small stone and asked him to try and hit the geese with it. He complied with their request, and as soon as he had bit the geese they began to sing. This made him laugh, for their singing felt as though somebody tickled him. Then his companions asked him, 'Do you wish to see Tahi't's daughters?' When he expressed his desire they opened the clond door, and he saw two bashfnl young girls beyond the clouds. When he looked down upon the earth he saw the tops of the trees looking like so many pins. But he wished to return to the earth. He pulled his blanket over his head and flung himself down.

He arrived at the earth unburt, and found himself at the foot of some trees. Soon he-discovered a small house, the door of which was covered with mats. He peeped into it, and heard a child crying that had jast been born. He himself was the child, and when he came to be grown up he told the people of Tahi't. They had heard about him before, but only then they learnt everything about the upper world. Ky'itl'à'c told that those whose heads had been cut off had their eyes between their shoulders in the upper world.

Another man, named Gyinaskila'c, did not believe in Tahi't. He said to the people, 'Kill me! If I really go to Tahi't, I shall throw down fuel from heaven.' He was killed, and after a short time four pieces of wood fell down from heaven. Then the people knew that Ky'itl'à'c's report was true.

In the second of these tales, reference is made to the Tlingit idea of transmigration of souls. Former authors state that man is born anew four times, and that the soul is then annihilated. I did not hear of any such restriction, but it may be that some notion of this kind obtains. The souls of animals also descend to the next generation, but there is no transmigration of souls between man and animal, or between animals of different kinds. There is particularly no transmigration of souls between man and his crest.

It is said that 'our world is sharp as a knife.' Although there is a mpthical side to the idea, it seems to be said principally in a moral aspect. The saying continues, 'We must take care that we do not deviate from the straight course, for else we would fall off and die.' My informant explained this, saying, 'Once a boy did not believe that our world is sharp. He danced about and behaved foolishly. Then he ran a splinter of wood into his foot and died. Now be knew that our world is as sharp as a knife.'

I have not heard that Yētl, the great hero of their myths, is worshipped, but they believe tbat he will return. It is, however, not stated what he will do ou his retarn, whether he will continue his adventares or benefit mankind. It mast be borne in mind that Yêtl, in all his exploits, by which he benefited man, did so against bis will and intent.

The Tlingit pray to the sun to give them food and fair weather, but it does not seem that he occupies in any way a prominent place among their deities. They also pray and offer to the mountains and to the thander, to the killer (Delphinus orca) and to the seals. Their religion is a nature worship. When praying they blow up eagle-down as an offering, and give to every being what they think it likes best. The mountains are asked for fair wind. When they hear a peal of thunder, they shake themselves and jump high up, crying, 'Take all my sicknes.s from me!'

The killer is believed to apset canoes and take the crew with him. Him and the seal they ask for food. They believe in fabulous seal-men. When one of these is seen, they pour a backet of fresh water into the sea.

I have not discovered any belief distinguishing the religion of the Haida from that of the Tlingit.

Tsimshian.-While the religion of the Tlingit and Haida seems to be a nature worship, founded on the general idea of the animation of natural objects, no object obtaining a prominent place, that of the Tsimshian is a pure worship of Heaven (Leqa'). Heaven is the great deity who has 2
number of mediators called Neqno'q. Any natural object can be a Neqno' $q$, but the most important ones are sun and moon, spirits appearing in the shape of lightning strokes and animals. Neqno'q designates anything mysterions. It is the supernatural will of the deity, as well as the whistle which is used in the dances and is kept a profound secret, and a mere sleight-of-band. In one myth the master of the moon, the pestilence (Hai'atliloq), appears as a powerful deity. I suspect that this last idea is due to Kwâkiutl inflaence. Heaven rules the destinies of mankind; Heaven tanght man to distinguish between good and bad, and gave the religious laws and institations. Heaven is gratified by the mere existence of man. He is worshipped by offerings and prayer, the smoke rising from fires being especially agreeable to him. Marderers, adolterers, and those who behave foolishly, talking to no purpose, and making noise at night, are especially hateful to him: He loves those who take pity upon the poor, who do not try to become rich by selling at high prices what others want. His messengers, particularly sun and moon, must be treated with respect. Men make themselvesagreeable to the deity by cleanliness. Therefore, they must bathe and wash their whole bodies before praying. For the same reason they take a vomitive when they wish to please the deity well. They fast and abstain from touching their wives if they desire their prayers to be successful. They offer everything that is considered valuable-eagle-down, red paint, red cedar bark, good elk-skin lines, \&c. The offering is burnt.

The Tsimshian do not always pray to Heaven directly, but far more frequently to his mediators. Thus they pray in a general way to the Neqno'q: 'Neqno'q, Neqno'q! Semâ'yits, Semâ'yits! ramrấd巨n! àyeir tie'n qspäyä'neksen tle'rent! Neqna'q! ramrâ'den!' that is, 'Neqno'q, Neqno'q! Chief, chief! Have pity upon us! Else there will be nobody to make smoke under you! Neqno'q! Have pity upon os!' Or praying for fair weather : ' $N_{E q n o} q, N_{E q n o}$ ' ! SEmâ'yits, SEmâ'yits! ramrâ'den! tgyine ${ }^{\prime}$ e wäl tlere'nt nesegya'tent. Man sä́ikya sī ent arla ma d'ō ds'änt!' ' Neqno 'q, Neqno'q! Chief, chief! Have pity apon ns! Look down and see what those whom you made are doing! Pull up thy foot and sweep off thy face!' ('Pull up thy foot' $=$ stop the rain; 'sweep off thy face' $=$ take away the clonds.) The following is a prayer for calm weather: ' Loós'segya nā ksenã'tlgent! Semâ'yit demwul. gya'kset!' ‘Hold in thy breath, Chief! that it be calm!' Before eating they barn food; having done so they pray: 'Wa sEmâ'yits dem ga'benguaa qpigä' ga'benmèe. Tawā'l māndegua'a, tawā'l māndegua'a tlgerané' E. Gyī' EnEm!' 'Here! Chief! Here is for you to eat, part of our food. It is all that is left us! It is all that is left us! Now feed us!' In the same way the woman in the legend prays: 'Wa wa wa gyí'EnEm hadsena's!' 'Now, now, now feed us! fortunate one!' (name of a bird, a Neqno'q)

The dead go to a place similar to that of the living. Our summer is their winter, our winter their summer. They have everything-fisht, venison, and skins-in abundance.

If a special object is to be attained, they beliere they can compel the deity to grant it by a rigid fasting. For seven days they have to abstain from food and from seeing their wives. Daring these days they have to lie in bed motionless. After seven days they may rise, wash themselves, comb the right side of their head, and paint the right side of their face. Then they might look at their wives. A less rigid form of fasting extends over four days only. To make the ceremony very successfal, their
wives mast join them. If the wife should not be true to the husband the eflect of the fasting is destroyed.

The following beliefs and customs are connected with their religious ideas and ceremonies :-'Iwins are believed to control the weather; therefore they pray to wind and rain: 'Calm down, breath of the twins.' Whatever twins wish for is fulfilled. Therefore they are feared, as they can harm the man whom they hate. They can call the olachen and salmon, and are therefore called Sewibā'n=making plentiful.

The olachen is called halemâ'tk, the Saviour. Certain ceremonies are prescribed when the first fish are caught. They are roasted on an instrument of elderberry-wood, of the form shown in the accompanying sketch. A handle is tied to the central rod, which is aboat thros Fig. 4. feet long. A short crosspiece is fastened to the rod about one foot from its end, and twigs are fastened to its outer ends, being tied to the central rod near its upper end. The man who roasts the fish on this instrument must wear his travelling attire: mittens, cape, \&c. While it is roasted they pray for plenty of fish, and ask that they might come to their fishing gronnd. When the fish is turned round, all cry, law $\bar{a}^{\prime}$ ! The fire must not be blown up. In eating the fish they must not cool it by blowing, nor break a single bone. Everything mast be kept neat and clean. The rakes for catching the fish must be hidden in the house. The fish must not be left outside, bat stored in boxes. The first fish that they give as a present to their neighbours must be covered with a new mat. When the fish become more plentiful, they are doubled up, and roasted on the point of a stick. After that they are treated without any further ceremonies.
$K w a \bar{k} i u t l$.-The Kwākintl worship the sun, who is called K'ants'ó'ump (our father), $A^{\prime}$ ta (the one above), K anski'yi (our brother), K ansno lia (our elder brother), or Amiaéqet (the one to whom we must be gratefai). They pray to him and they give him offerings $H$ is son is K-ānikilak- (with outspread wings), who descended from heaven and wandered all over the world, giving man his social institntions, customs, and arts. They pray to him also. After death the souls go to a country like ours, and continue to be what they have been on earth. The ghosts may reappear; to see them brings sickness and death.

The Kwākintl have a belief regarding twins similar to that of the Tsimshian. They consider twins transformed salmon, and, as children of salmon, they are guarded against going near the water, as it is helieved they would be re-transformed into salmon. While children they are able to summon any wind by motions of their hands, and can make fair or bad weather. They have the power of curing diseases, and use for this purpose a rattle called $k^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} q$ qaten, which has the shape of a flat box about three feet long by two feet wide. Their mother-marks are considered scars of wounds which they received when they were struck by a harpoon while still having the sbape of salmon.

The Coast Salish.-The Coast Salish worship the sun and the great wanderer. The Çatlo'ltq call the latter Kumsnō'otl (our elder brother), a word which has been borrowed from the Kwākiutl. They pray to him Ai kuaçqātō'mötl, Kumsnōotl, kums étlten! (O Kumsnō'otl, give us to eat!) The Snanaimuq must not partake of any food until the sun is well up in the sky. The $\mathrm{Sk} \cdot \mathrm{q}^{-\quad}$ mic seem to consider the great wandertr, whom they call $Q^{-1}$ is, the great deity. He is also called $Q^{-1}$ 'aqa and

Slaä'lek.am. All these tribes believe that the touch or the seeing of ghosts brings sickness and death.

The Kutona'qa have a distinct sun-worship. They pray and sacrifice to the sun. Before beginning their council they put tobacco into a pipe and offer it three times to the sun, holding up the pipe-stem to it. This ceremony is called wusitlwatlak $\cdot \bar{o}^{\prime} n \bar{e}(=$ making the sun smoke). Then the pipe is tarned round three times horizontally, a smoke being thus offered to the four points of the compass. They make hoops of twigs, and everyone ties to his a part of what he desires to bave. A horse's hair indicates that horses are wished for. The hoop is hang to a tree as an offering to the sun. Before war expeditions, and to ward off disaster, they celebrate a great festival, in which the first joint of a finger is cut off as an offering to the sun. It is then hang to a tree. They also pierce their flesh on arms and breast with awls, cat off the piece they have thas lifted and offer it to the sun. The first-born child is sacrificed to him. The mother prays, ' I am with child. When it is born I shall offer it to you. Have pity upon ns.' Thus they expected to secure health and good fortune for their families. These customs evidently correspond to the similar castoms of the Blackfeet, although my informant maintained that the so-called sun-dance was never held by the Kntonaqa. In winter a large dancing ('medicine') lodge is built for dancing and praying parposes. Then they pray for snow in order to easily obtain game.

The dead go to the sun. One of the important featares of their religion is the belief that all the dead will return at a future time. This event is expected to take place at Lake Pend Oreille. Therefore all Kutonaqa tribes used to assemble there from time to time to await the dead. On their journey they danced every night around a fire, going in the direction of the sun. Only those who were at war with any tribe or family danced the opposite way. The festival at the lake, which lasted many days, and consisted principally of dances, was celebrated only at rare intervals.

## Shamanism and Secret Societies.

In the preceding account of the religions ideas of the Indians of British Columbia I hare not mentioned shamanism, which forms a most important part of their religions, and which is closely connected with all their customs. All nature is animated, and the spirit of any being can become the genius of a man, who thas acquires supernatural powers. These spirits are called Yēk by the Tlingit: they are the Neqno'q of the Tsimshian. It is a remarkable fact that this acquiring of supernataral powers is designated by the Tsimshian, Bilqula, and Nutka by a Kwākiutl word (Tlōk•oala), which in these instances, however, is restricted to the highest degrees of supernataral power. This proves that the ideas of the Kwakintl exercised a great influence over those of the neighbouring peoples, and for this reason I shall begin with a description of shamanism among the Kwankiatl.

The secrets of shamanism are confided to a number of secret societies which are closely connected with the clans of the tribes. Thus the art of the 'medicine man' (of the shaman proper) is derived from Haialikyawē, the ancestor of the gens of that name. The secrets of others are obtained by initiation. I failed to reach a fully satisfactory
understanding of this subject, which offers one of the most interesting but at the same time most difficult problems of North-iVest Americau ethnology. The crest of a clan and the insignia of the secret societies are acquired in the same way. They are obtained by marriage. If a man wants to obtain a certain carving, or the membership of a secret society, he must marry the daughter of a man who is in possession of this carving or who is a member of the secret society; but this can be done only by consent of the whole tribe, who mast declare the candidate worthy of becoming a member of this society or of acquiring that crest. Notwithstanding this fact, the man who is thas entitled to become a member of the secret society must be initiated.

The insignia of all these societies are made of the bark of cedar, carefally prepared, and dyed red by means of maple bark. It may be said that the secrets are vested in these ornaments of red cedar bark, and wherever these ornaments are found on the north-west coast secret societies occur. I do not hesitate to say that this custom must have originated among the Kwākiatl, as it is principally developed among them, and as the other tribes whenever they have such societies designate them with Kwākiutl names. Historical traditions are in accord with this view.

I will not attempt in this place to describe all the secret societies and their insignia, my knowledge of them being still deficient, and an amply illustrated article having appeared in the 'Internationales Archiv für Ethnologie.' I shall describe, however, the general character of these societies and some of the most important among them.

The secret societies are allowed to meet and to perform their dances and ceremonies only in winter. The time of the year when they meet is called by most tribes Tsā'ēk•a, or Tsētsã'èk•a (=the secrets). The following facts were observed among the Kwākiatl. During the Tsä'èk•a season the whole tribe is divided into a number of groups which form secr.t societies. Amoug the Kwankiatl I observed some groups, the principal of which is called the Méemqoat ( $=$ the seals). It embraces the secret societies, principally the Hä'mats'a and the Nutlematl. Besides these the masks of the crane, $\mathrm{Ha}^{\prime}$ 'maa, grizzly bear, and several others belong to this group. Among the other groups I mention the following:
2. $\mathrm{K} \cdot \bar{o}^{\prime} \mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{oski}^{\prime} \mathrm{mo}$, who are formed by the old men.
3. Maa'mq'enok ( = the killers, Delph. orca), the young men.
4. Mō'smōs ( $=$ the dams), the married women.
5. Kā'k'aō (=the partridges), the unmarried girls.
6. Hé'melk• (=those who eat continually), the old chiefs.
7. Kéki'qalak• (=the crows), the children.

Every one of these groups has its separate feasts, in which no member of another gruap is allowed to take part ; but before beginning their feast they must send a dish of food to the Ha'mats'a, At the beginning of the feast the chief of the group-for instance, of the $K \cdot a^{\prime} k \cdot a o$-will say, 'The partridges always have something nice to eat,' and then all peep like partridges. All these groups try to offend the Mé'emqoat, and every one of these is offended by a particular action or object. The grizzly bear mask must not be shown any red colour, his preference being black. The Nutlematl and crane do not like to hear a nose mentioned, as theirs are very long. Sometimes the former try to induce men to mention their noses, and then they barn and smash whatever ther can lay their
hands on ; e.g. a Nutlematl blackens his nose; then the people will say: ' Oh, your head is black;' but if anybody should happen to say, 'What is the matter with your nose ?' the Nutlmatl would take offence. Sometimes they cut off the prows of canoes because of their resemblance to noses. The Nutlematl must be as filthy as possible.

Sometimes a chief will give a feast to which all these groups are invited. Then nobody is allowed to eat before the $\mathrm{Ha}^{-1}$ mats'a has eaten, and if he should decline to accept the food offered him, the feast must not take place. After he has once bitten men he is not allowed to take part in feasts.

The chief's wife must make a brief speech before the meal is served. She bas to say, 'I thank you for coming. Be merry and eat and drink.' If she should make a mistake, deviating from the formula, she has to give another feast.

From these brief notes it will be seen that the winter festivals, besides their religious character, are events of social interest in which merrymaking and feasting form a prominent feature. The same has been observed among numerous American tribes.

Among the secret societies forming the group of the Me'emqoat the Ha'mats'a is by far the most important. The H ${ }^{-1}$ mats'a is initiated by one of three spirits: Baqbakualanosi'naè, Baqbakuā'latlé, $\mathrm{Ha}^{\prime}$ maa or the haman-headed crane. The ceremonies of initiation are as follows: In winter the inhabitants of the village assemble every night and sing foar songs, accompanying the dance of the novice, who is accompanied by ten companions called Sâlatlila, who carry rattles. When the dance is at an end they leave the house where the festival is celebrated, always surrounding the novice ; they go all around the village, visiting every house. All of a sudden the novice disappears, and his companions say that he has flown away. Then his voice is heard in the woods, and everybody knows that he is now with the spirits. There he stays from one to five months, and the people believe that during this time he wanders all over the world. At the end of this term his voice is again heard in the woods. Birds are heard whistling on all sides of the village, and then the Indians prepare to meet the new Ha'mats'a. The sound of the birds' voices is produced by means of whistles, which are blown by the new Ha'mats'a and by those who were initiated at former occasions, but they are kept a profound secret from all those who are not initiated.

The father of the young Ha'mats'a invites the inhabitants of the village to a feast. The guests sit down in the rear of the house, everyone carrying a stick for beating time. Two watchmen, each carrying a rattle in shape of a skull, stand on each side of the door, and are occasionally relieved. A chief stands in the centre of the house, two messengers attending him. These he despatches to the women of the gens of which the new Hámats'a is a member, and they are ordered to dance. The interval until the women are dressed up and maike their appearance is filled with railleries between the messengers. As soon as the watchmen see a woman coming they begin swinging their rattles, and then the guests begin singing and beating time with their sticks. The woman enters the house, and, turning to the rigl:t, goes around the fire until she arrives in the rear part of the house. Then the guests stop singing and beating time until the dance begins. In dancing the woman first faces the singers; then she tarns to the left, to the fire, and to the right, and, finally, faces the singers again. She leaves the house by going along the left side of the fire. When the
feast is alnost at an end, a terrible noise is heard on the roof of the honse, where the new Hámats'a is dancing and whistling. Sometimes he throws the boards forming the roof aside and thrasts his arms into the house. Then he disappears again, and his whistles are heard in the woods.

His father requests the men to assemble early in the morning, and they fet out to meet the young Há'mats'a in the woods. They take a long rope made of cedar bark, and, having arrived at an open place in the forest, lay it on the ground in form of a square. They then sit down inside the square, all along the rope, which represents the platform of the house, and sing four new songs composed for the purpose. The two first ones are in a quick binary measure, the third is in a five-part measure, and the last has a slow movement. One man dances in the centre of the square. Meanwhile the mother of the new Ha'mats'a invites the women and the old men to a feast, which is celebrated in the house. All the men are painted black; the women red. The latter wear buttonblankets, head-rings of cedar bark dyed red, and their bair is strewn with eagle-down. The men who are in the forest wear head-rings and necklets of hemlock branches. While they are singing and dancing the new Hà'mats'a makes his appearance. He looks pale and haggard, and this hair falls out readily. He wears three neck-rings, a head-ring, and arm-rings made of hemlock branches, bat no shirt and no blanket. He is immediately surrounded by his companion:, and the men retarn to the village singing the new songs. When the women hear them approaching they come out of the house and expect them on the street, dancing. They wish to please the new Ha'mats'a, for whosoever excites his anger is at once attacked by him. He seizes his arm and bites a small piece of flesh out of it. It is said that in fact this is done with a sharp, bent knife, but I doubt whether this is true. At the end of the Tsā'ek-a season the Ha'mats'a mast compensate every single person whom he has bitten with a blanket or two. In the evening the people assemble in the honse of the Ha'mats'a's father for singing and dancing. If anything should displease the $\mathrm{Ha}^{\prime}$ 'mais'a, he rashes out of the house and soon retarns carrying a corpse. His companions continue to surround him in all his movements. He enters the house and, turning to the right, goes around the fire until he arrives in the rear of the house. As snon as the old Ha'mats'a see the corpse they make a rush at it, and fight with each other for the flesh. They break the skall and devorr the brains, and smash the bones to get at the marrow. The companions cut large slices from the body, and pat them into the month of the young Ha'mats'a, who bolts them. At the end of this ceremony the father of the young Ha'mats'a presents eversone with bracelets of copper.

The new Ha'mats'a dances four nights-twice with rings of hemlock branches, twice with rings of dyed cedar bark. Strips of cedar bark are tied into the hair, which is covered with eagle-down. His face is painted black; he wears three neck-rings of cedar bark, arranged in a peculiar way, and each of a separate design. Strips of cedar bark are tied around his wrists and ankles. He dances in a squatting position, his arms cxtended to one side, as though he were carrying a corpse. His hands are trembling continually. First he extends his arms to the left; then he jumps to the right, at the same time moving his arms to the right. His eyes are staring, his lips protruding voluptuously.

The Indians are said to prepare the corpses by laying them into the
sea and covering them with stones. The Çatlo'ltq, who also practise the Ha'mats'a dances, make artificial corpses by sewing dried halibut to the bones of a skeleton and covering its skall with a scalp.

The new Hā'mats'a is not allowed to have intercourse with anybody, but must stay for a whole year in his rooms. He must not work until the end of the following dancing season. The Ha'mats'a must use a kettle, spoon, and dish of his own for four months after the dancing season is at an end; then these are thrown away and he is allowed to eat with the other people. During the time of the winter dance a pole, called $h \bar{a}^{\prime} m s p i q$, is erected in the house where the Ha'mats'a lives. It is covered with red cedar bark, and made so that it can turn round.

Another secret society is called Mā'mak'a (from mak $q a^{\prime}$, to throw). The initiation is exactly like that of the Ha'mats'a. The man or woman who is to become Mā'mak' a disappears in the woods and stays for several months with Má'mak''a, the genius of this group, who gives him a magic staff and a small mask.: The staff is made of a wooden tube and a stick that fits into it, the whole being covered with cloth. In dancing the Ma'mak''a carries this staff between the palms of his hands, which he holds pressed against each other, moving his arms up and down like a swimmer. Then he opens his hands, separating the palms, and his staff is seen to grow and to decrease in size. When the time has come for the new Mà'mak'a to return from the woods, the inhabitants of the village go in search of him. They sit down in a square formed by a rope, and sing four new songs. Then the new Mà'mak''a appears, adorned with. hemlock branches. While the Ha'mats'a is given ten companions, the Māmak'a has none. The same night he dances for the first time. If he does not like one of the songs, he shakes his staff, and immediately the spectators cover their heads with their blankets. Then he whirls his staff, which strikes one of the spectators, who at once begins to bleed profusely. Then Ma'mak'a is reconciled by a new song, and he pulls out his staff from the stricken man's body. He must pay the latter two blankets for this performance, which, of course, is agreed upon beforehand.

This may suffice as a description of the secret societies. The dance of the $M^{-} \bar{a}^{\prime}$ mak''a shows the idea of the natives regarding the origin of sickness. It is the universal notion of an object having entered the body of the sick man ; by its removal he is restored to health. The Ma'mak'a and the ordinary medicine man have the power of finding such objects and of removing them by means of sucking or pulling them out with carved instruments, by the help of the noise of rattles and incantations. Among the objects thrown into the bo ly to cause sickness, quartz is considered one of the most dangerous. Sickness is also produced by the soul leaving the body. The shaman is able to find it and to restore it. Besides the Mā'mak'’a, the descendants of Haialikyawē and those initiated in his mysteries are considered the most powerful medicine men. Magic power can also be acquired by a visit to the fabulous mountain Ts'ilkyumpaé, the feather mountain, un which the magic eagle-down and the quartz which enables the possessor to fly are found.

The Tsimshian liave four secret societies, which have evidently been borrowed from the Kwākiutl-the Olala or Wihalait, Nō'ntlem, Méttla, and Sembalait. The words Olala, Nō'ntlem (=mad), and Méitla have been borrowed from the Kwiakiutl. Wihalait means the great dance ; Semhalait, the ordinary dance. The Olala corresponds to the Ha'mats'a of the Kwākiatl ; the Nō'ntlem to the Nūtlmatl. The Olala is (or rather
was) a prerogative of the Gyitqā'tla and Gyispaqlà'ots, who obtained them by intermarriage with the northern Kwākiutl tribes. There exists a tradition among the Tsimshian referring to the fabulons origin of these societies by the initiation of a man; bat it is evident that this legend has been invented in analogy to others of a similar character. Historical traditions, and the fact that the Olala is confined to the southern Tsimshian tribes, prove that they are of foreign origin.

A man who is not a member of a secret society is a ' common man.' He becomes a middle-class man after the first initiation, and attains higher rank by repeated initiations. The norice disappears in the same way as among the Kwākiutl. It is supposed that he goes to heaven. During the dancing season a feast is given, and while the women are dancing the novice is suddenly said to have disappeared. If he is a child he stays away four days; youths remain absent six days, and grown-up persons several months. Chiefs are supposed to stay in heaven during the fall and the entire winter. When this period has elapsed they suddenly reappear on the beach, carried by an artificially-made monster belonging to their crest. Then all the members of the secret society to which the novice is to belong gather and walk down in grand procession to the beach to fetch the child. At this time the child's parents bring presents, particularly elk-skins, strung upon a rope as long as the procession, to be given at a subsequent feast. The people surround the novice and lead him into every house in order to show that he has returned. Then he is taken to the house of his parents and a bunch of cedar bark is fastened over the door, to show that the place is tabooed, and nobody is allowed to enter. The chief sings while it is being fastened. In the afternoon the sacred house is prepared for the dance. A section in the rear of the house is divided off by means of curtains; it is to serve as a stage, on which the dancers and the novice appear. When all is ready, messengers, carrying large carved batons, are sent round to invite the members of the society, the chief first. The women sit down in one row, nicely dressed up in button-blankets, and their faces painted red. The chief wears the Amhalait-a carving rising from the forehead, set with sea-lion barbs, and with a long drapery of ermine-skins-the others, the cedar-bark rings of the society. Then the women begin to dance. After a while a prominent man rises to deliver a speech. He says: 'All of you know that our novice went up to heaven. There he made a mistake, and has been returned. Now you will see him.' Then he begins the song, the curtain is drawn, and masked dancers are seen surrounding the novice, and representing the spirits he has encountered in heaven. At the same time eagle-down is blown into the air. The novice has a pair of clappers between his fingers, and for every new initiation he receives an additional clapper. After the dance is over, the presents which were strung on the rope are distributed among the members of the secret society.

The novice has a beautifully-painted room set apart for his use. He has to remain naked during the dancing season. He must not look into the fire, must abstain from food and drink, and is oaly allowed to moisten his lips occasionally. He has to wear his head-ring continually. After the ceremonies are all gone through, the festival of 'clothing the novice' is celebrated. He sits in his room quietly singing while the people assemble in the house. His song is heard to grow louder and louder, and at last he makes his appearance. He has pat off his ring of
cedar bark. Then the people try to throw a bear-skin over him, which they succeed in doing only after a severe struggle. At this feast all societies take part, each sitting grouped together. The common people siand at the door. This ends the initiation ceremonies.

The festival of 'clothing' is àlso celebrated by the Kwâkiatl, when it seems to indicate the end of the trance of the novice.

The initiation is repeatedly celebrated, the rank of the person being the higher the more frequently he has gone through the ceremonies. But nobody, chiefs excepted, can be a member of more than one secret society. It seems that the Semhalait are considered -a preparatory step for the initiation into other societies, so that every person must have been - Semhalait before he can become Mēitla, Nōntlem, or Olala. A Mēitla, however, can never become Nōntlem or Olala. Those who passed twice tbrough the Semhalait ceremony are called Ts'é'ik. The Méitla have a red head-ring and red eagle-downs, the Nontlem a neck-ring plaited of white and red cedar bark, the Olala a similar but far larger one. The members of the societies receive a head-ring for each time they pass through these ceremonies. These are fastened one on top of the other. The Nōntlem destroy everything, carry firebrands, and tear live dogs to pieces, which they devour. They correspond exactly to the Nūtlmatl and Nōntsistatl of the Kwākintl.

The isecret societies have-no connection whatever with the gentes. Generally the father determines to what society each child is to belong, and has them initiated by proxy, so that they may belong to the middle class from childhood.

The Haida borrowed these customs from the Tsimshian, and sometimes perform the Mēitla and Olala dances; but the Tsimshian maintain that they have no right to do so. Their dance, corresponding to the Sembalait of the Tsimshian, is that of the shaman, the Sk:aga, the initiation being identical with that of the Tsimshian Semhalait. The Sk'aga has a number of head-rings, one on top of the other, corresponding to the number of ceremonits he went through.

The shamans proper of the Tlingit, Haida, and Tsimshian are initiated by a spirit after long fasting. Those of the Tlingit and Haida acquire their knowledge of the mysteries of shamanism by tearing out the tongues of an otter, an eagle, and several other animals. In doing so they mast use a bundle of twigs strung together with spruce roots for catching the blood that flows from the animal's tongue. Those twigs which have not come into contact with the blood are taken out. Sometimes a piece or the whole of the tongue is wrapped in those bandles, and, in cases of great emergency, worn by the shaman round the neck to endow him with great power over spirits (see 'Journal Amer. Folk-Lore,' i. p. 218). The dignity seems to be hereditary. They wear long hair, which must never be toucked with the hands, and is therefore extremely filthy and matted. They wear a necklace set with bone ornaments, a long curved pieçe of bone in the septam of the nose, a bird's head on the breast, a rattle, and a carved staff. Their art consists in extracting the sickness or in finding and restoring the soal of the sick person. In trging to find it three or four shamans sing and rattle over the sick person until they declare to have found the whereabouts of his soul, which is supposed to be in possession of the salmon or olashen, or in that of the deceased shaman. Then they go to the place where it is supposed to be and by singing and incantations obtain possession of it and enclose it in a hollow
carred bone. Then mountain-goat tallow, red paint, eagle-down, and o:her valuable objects are burnt, and the soul held over the fire. The bone is then laid upon the sick man's head, the shaman saying, 'Here is your soul. Now you will be better and eat again.' Sometimes the soul is supposed to be held by a shaman, who is paid for returning $i v$.

A supposed sorcerer is tied up and starved until a confession is made, when he is driven into the sea to expel the evil spirit. Should he refuse to confess he is either starved to death or placed on shore at the limit of low tide, and, being bound, is drowned when the water rises. Sorcery is practised principally by means of parts of the body of the person to whom the sorcerer wishes to do harm. If it is believed that a man died in consequence of being bewitched, the Tsimshian take the heart from the body and put a red-hot stone into it. They wish at the same time that the enemy should die. If the heart burst their wish is expected to be fulfilled; if not, it is a sign that their suspicions were anfounded.

The sbamans of the Coast Salish go into the woods in order to be initiated. They swim in ponds and wash their bodies with cedar branches, and thas prepare themselves to meet the spirits and the fabulous doubleheaded snake who give them their superuatural powers. They cause sickness by making bits of quartz and wood fly into the body of their adversary, and heal the sick by removing these objects. To show their power they perform dances in certain festivals in which they pretend to cut their bodies with knives; the blood is seen to flow from the wounds; but when they move their hands over them no trace of the cuts is to be seen. At the burial, food is burnt for the dead on the beach. On this occasion the shaman throws presents for the dead into the fire on behalf of the mourners. He then affirms that be sees the deceased person's spirit, who speaks to him. In the winter dances each shaman wears the painting or the mask of the spirit who initiated him.

The shamans of the Kutona'qa are also initiated in the woods after long fasting. They cure sick people, and prophesy the result of banting and war parties. If this is to be done, the shaman ties a rope around his waist and goes into the medicine-lodge, where he is covered with an elkskin. After a short while he appears, his thumbs firmly tied together by a knot which is very difficult to open. He re-enters the lodge, and after a short time reappears, his thambs being untied. After he has been tied a second time be is put into a blanket, which is firmly tied togetber like a bag. The line which is tied around his waist, and to which his thumbs are fastened, may be seen protruding from the place where the blanket is tied together. Before be is tied up, a piece of bone is placed between his toes. Then the men pull at the protruding end of the rope, which gives way; the blanket is removed and the shaman is seen to lie under it. This performance is called $\mathrm{k} \cdot$ 'eqnemnā'm ( $=$ somebody cut in two). The shaman remains silent, and re-enters the lodge, in which rattles made of pitces of bone are heard. Suddenly something is heard falling down. Three times this noise is repeated, and then singing is heard in the lodge. It is supposed that the shaman has involed souls of certain people whom he wished to see, and that their arrival produced the noise. From these he obtains the information and instructions which he later on communicates to the people.

## LINGUISTICS.

I. Tlingit.<br>Obtained from Mrs. Vine, Victoria, a native of the Stikin tribe.

## PHONETICS.

Voncls: a, e, E, i, o, u.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { Consonants: } & \begin{array}{l}
\mathrm{d}, \mathrm{t} ; \mathrm{gy}, \mathrm{ky} ; \mathrm{g}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}^{\mathrm{r}} ; \mathrm{g}, \mathrm{k} ; \mathrm{w}, \mathrm{r}, \mathrm{q}, \mathrm{Q} ; \\
\mathrm{h}, \mathrm{H}, \mathrm{y} ; \mathrm{n} ; \mathrm{s}, \mathrm{c} ; \mathrm{dz}, \mathrm{ts} ; \mathrm{dj}, \mathrm{tc} ; \mathrm{dl}, \mathrm{tl} .
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

The labials are absent. The difference between surds and sonants is very slight. I find in my lists a great number of cases in which for the same sound both surds and sonants are used promiscuously. The difference is so slight that I am inclined to think the language has only surd-sonants, which we apperceive by the means of our surds and sonants, and that they are for this reason considered two sounds. The $r$ is a very deep guttural, the mouth assuming at the same time the position for pronouncing $x$, the lips only being a little further apart. The uvula vibrates very lit le, and thus it happens that the sound is very much alike $n$. In many cases, particularly when preceding $u$, it is very difficult to distinguish both sounds. There seems to be a $d z$ and $d j$, the sonants corresponding to $t s$ and $t c$; but as. in all instances I was just as much inclined to write the latter, I have mostly applied the latter form. The biatus is very frequent, and occurs after all consonants. No combinations of consonants occur in the beginning of the word, except $d l$ and $t l$, followed by a guttural, and perhaps $s$ followed by the same. All letters can be initial and terminal sounds. I found the following terminal combinations of consonants:

| qk |  | ks | kc | kts |  | kt | ktl |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| nk | nq | k.s |  |  |  | k't | k'tl |
| sk |  |  |  |  | qtc | qt |  |
| ck |  |  | nc |  | nte |  | ntl |
| tk |  |  |  |  | stc |  | tctl |

Sonants occur very rarely at the end of words, but this may be accounted for by the indefinite character of these scunds. Combinations of consonants are very rare. I do not attempt to give a list, as it is in many instances doubtful whether the word is really a single word or a compound.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

## THE NOUN.

The Tlingit language has no grammatical sex and no separate forms for singular and plural. As Wemiaminov states that there is a plural, I bave made frequent attempts to find it, but my search has been in vain, and I agree with Krause, who states that there is no separate form for the plaral. In two or three instances I found the terminal vowel of nouns repeated, the word expressing at the same time a plural; but I have reason to believe that this repetition has merely euphonic reasons, as it is also found in other cases, and as the plural of the same word has frequently the same form as the singular: tlō̄ and $t \bar{u}$, , noses. Wemiaminov mentions the plural $t^{\prime} c k$, stones (singular $t^{\prime} e$ ), but I find in my collection $d \bar{c} q(t)$, two stones. If it is necessary or desirable to state txpressly that the plural is meant $k \cdot t o q$, a number of --., is placed after the noun. It seems to me probable that this is the plural referred to by Wemiaminov and speiled-khth. I have not found any indication of the existence of cases, not even of the instrumentalis mentioned by Wemiaminov.

Compound nouns are of very frequent occurrence, the components being placed side by side :
ca $q \bar{u}^{\overrightarrow{ }} n u u$, hair = head hair.

- $k \cdot \cdot \bar{u} s t$ t'alitl, ankle $=$ leg knuckle.
$s E^{\prime} s a a^{\prime} s \bar{e}$, mast $=$ sail tree.
ts'ak. sēt, necklace $=$ bone necklace.



Local adverbs enter frequently into compound words of this kind :
$d z^{\prime} \bar{e} k \cdot d a k \bar{c} t$, pipe $=$ smoke around box.
$t \bar{u} u q$ riré't, whistle $=$ into blow instrument.
an $k \cdot a$ niqu Arnica cordifolia = town on medicine.
diq kara kidjét, horse = back upon sit.
gan da तa gū'gō, woodpecker = tree-out side pick.
k'iri $t^{\prime} e^{\prime} k \cdot \bar{r}$, icicle $=$ above ice.
k.anyiqk.u até'; aurora = fire-like weather colour.
kin de: tcunét , Anas boschas $=$ moving straight up.
The names of colours are compound words:
$k \cdot a n y i ' q a t \bar{e}$, red $=$ fire-like colour. tlíd yiqatè, white $=$ snow-like colour. $k \bar{c} t l$ ha'tléc yigaté, yellow = dog dung colour.

THE ADJECTIVE.
The adjective follows the substantive to which it belongs, except when it has a verbal meaning :
tcītl qūk, dried halibut. nät curí', half fathom. $k e \bar{c} l l \mathrm{E}^{\prime} t s k \bar{u}$, young dog.
aqa darét , oar = long paddle. tlük. rīdzè, reed = wide grass. hit tlēn, large house.

When the adjective stands for our adjective with the verbum substantivam, it generally precedes the substantive:
a tlēn hit, that is a large house.
NUMERALS.
Cardinal Numbers.

1, thēk".
2, dēq.
3, natsk'.
4, dük' $\bar{o}^{\prime} n$.
5, kēdjin.
6, tlédurcu'.
7, daqa durcu'.
8, natska durcu'.
9, $g^{\prime} \boldsymbol{c} u k$.
10, djinküt.
11, djjinkū̆t k•a tlēk".
20, tlē $k-\bar{u}$.

30, natsk' djinkā't.
40, dak' ${ }^{\prime}$ 'n djinku't.
50, kēdjin djinkū̀t.
60, tle durcu' djinkin't.
70, daqa durcu' djinkū't.
80, natska durcu' djink $\bar{a}^{\prime} t$.
90, $g^{\prime \prime} c u k$ djink ${ }^{\prime} t$.
100, kéajin kū.
200, djink $\bar{a}^{\prime} t k \cdot \bar{u}$.
300, natsk djinkī't k•ū.
400, dak' ${ }^{\prime} ' n$ djink $\bar{u}^{\prime} t ~ k \cdot d$.

Four is evidently the second two, five a derivative from djin, hand, while the numbers from 6 to 8 are the other one, two, three. Ten seems to mean both hands; 20 is one man; 100, five men; while the numbers from 30 to 90 mean three, four, five, \&c. tens.

In counting men the following numerals are used:

```
1 man tlé neq k}\overline{u}
2 men deq neq k\cdotu}
3 men natsky\overline{e}n*q k}\overline{a}
```

4 men $d a k \cdot ' \overline{o n e} \bar{e}^{\prime} n F q k \cdot \bar{a}$.
5 men kēdjin $\tilde{e}^{\prime} n_{E q} k \cdot \bar{u}$.
6 men tlē durcu' ne:q $k \cdot \bar{a}$.

The same numerals may be used in counting dogs.

## Ordinal Numbers.

The following ordinal numbers differ to some extent from those given by Wemiaminov, and appear in parts doubtful :
culk $a^{\prime}$, the first.
$i^{\prime} t a$, the second.
t'ara $a\left(\bar{c}^{\prime} a\right)$, the third.
anira $\left(d \bar{c}^{\prime} a\right)$, the fourth.
tlaqleara $\left(\bar{d}^{\prime} \dot{\prime} a\right)$, the fifth.
tlē durcura $\left(d^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} a\right)$, the sixth.
daqa durcura ( $\left.\bar{d}^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} a\right)$, the seventh.
natska durcura(dé'a), the eighth.

So far as I was able to discover, the cardinal numbers are generally used in place of the ordinal numbers.

Numeral Adverbs.
These are formed by adding the suffix - dahé $n$ to the cardinal numbers.
tlēdalaín $n$, once.
daqdahē'n, twice.
natsk' dahé'n, three times. dak'ōn dahé'n, four times.

## Distributive Numbers.

The cardinal numbers are at the same time distributives. I collected the following examples:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& t l \bar{l} k \cdot a n E q \text { and } t l \bar{e} n E q \text {, one to each. Natskyē } n E q \text {, three to each. } \\
& d E q n E q \text {, two to each. }
\end{aligned}
$$

It will be observed that in this instance that form of numeral is used which denotes a number of men. It is probable that when other substantives are referred to the other numerals take their place.

## THE PRONOUN

## Personal Pronoun.

There are two forms of the personal pronoun, which may be designated the ordinary and the selective forms. The difference of these forms will best be made clear by giving examples: To the question, Who is there ? I answer, qat (I), which is the ordinary form; while to the question, Who among all of you will help me? I answer, qatc ( 1 ).

Besides these we find two forms of the personal pronoun which are used in the inflexion of the verb: one in inflecting the transitive, the other in inflecting the intransitive verb, the latter being at the same time the object of the transitive pronoun. This makes it probable that the intransitive verb is really impersonal.


The transitive and intransitive forms must not be considered prefixes, as they are not inseparable from the verb.

## Demonstrative Pronoun.

Krause and Wemiaminov give the demonstrative pronouns: yatat, this; and yutat, that. Krause states that the adjective form is $y a$ and $y u$. I have no example of this kind in my list. There exists a demonstrative word $a$, which is very extensively used.

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { a tō, something inside. } & \text { aq ari age? is that mine? } \\
\text { a tl̄ün hit, that large house. } & \text { hit atl̄̄n } a \text {, that is a large house. }
\end{array}
$$

The following are evidently derivatives from the same demonstrative stem:
aq ari aua, that is mine. $\quad$ hit $g^{\prime} \varepsilon^{\prime} t s g \bar{o} a s i a^{\prime}$, that is a small house. $i$ hiti asia, that is your house.
Note.-The demonstrative $n \bar{e}$ is found twice in my collec ion :
$n \overline{\bar{u}} t c$ qat $n u$ si$n \overline{\bar{c}} q$, that man saved me.
$n \bar{e}$ atqa $a^{\prime}$ qat si $n \bar{c} k$, , that food me makes sick.

Note.--The personal and possessive pronouns, third person, are sometimes used with the termination $-t l t$, denoting that the person is at a distance, and thus receive a demonstrative meaning :
täflt ari aun, it is his, or that man's. lenstlt, they (at a distance).

## Possessive Pronoun.

The possessive pronoun has two forms, which are derived from the personal pronoun. The following form is most frequently found; it precedes the noun to which it belongs:


While in this form the noun is not altered, in the following it takes the suffix -ri:

Singular, 1 st person, aq-ri.
$", \quad$ 2nd $\quad$ i-ri.
$", ~ 3 r d ~ ", ~ t o ̄-r i . ~$


I am not able to give any rule as to the use of these forms. The substantive possessive pronoun is formed by the demonstrative $a$ and the second possessive form : aq a $r i$, mine (=my that).

Note.-The suffix -ri is sometimes contracted with the terminal sound of the noun :

$$
\text { aq hiti, my house ; instead of } a q \text { hit }-r i .
$$

## THE VERB.

In discussing the pronoun we stated that there are two forms, one for the transitive, the other for the intransitive verb, the latter being identical with the objective case of the transitive pronoun. This makes it probable that the intransitive verb may be impersonal, a theory which is the more probable on account of the remarkable particles used with these verbs. In Tlingit all verbs are transitive which express an activity, even in cases in which we do not use an object; all verbs expressing a state are intransitive, and for this reason our passive is rendered in the same way. Following is a list of transitive and intransitive verbs in the first person singular:

## Intransitive Verbs.

qat re $n \bar{e} \bar{k}^{〔}$, I am sick. qat re ta ura ha', I am sleepy. qat $w u$ di quét $\quad l$, I am tired. qat ran una ha', I am hungry.
qat tli tsīn, I am strong.
qat nu nūq. I recover from sickness, I am saved.
qat karane'tl, I break down.

In another group of such verbs the pronoun is placed after the stem.

Ilingit qat, I am a Tlingit. ank $\cdot \bar{u}^{\prime} \bar{o} q a t, ~ I ~ a m ~ r i c h . ~$
$i c \bar{a}^{\prime} n q a t, \mathrm{I}$ am poor.
gücu qat, I desire.

## Transitive Verbs.

at qa qa, I eat, (it).
qa aqtc, I hear.
qa djūn, I dream.
qa tl'éq, I dance.
$q a c \bar{\imath}, I$ sing.
qa tēn, I see.
qa ta, I sleep.
$k^{\prime} \bar{u} n q a \operatorname{gav}, \mathrm{I}$ am angry.
$y u q{ }^{\prime} a q a t E \tilde{n}, \mathrm{I}$ speak. at qa saé', I cook.
$q a \tan a^{\prime}$, I drink.
$q a t l i k^{c}$, I open my eyes.
at qa cṓruk', I laugh.
qa ce gük, I know to
qa göt, I walk.
q a t'iqt, I pound.
qa ten, I carry.
The verb, more especially the intransitive verb, appears frequently combined with certain particles, the meaning and origin of which I cannot explain. Former students of the Tlingit language failed to separate these particles from the words with which they are connected. Therefore the greater number of words of Wemiaminov's, as well as of other, lists are really compounds. I give first an alphabetic list of these particles. In those cases in which they may be omitted I have placed them in brackets.
dè : $\quad d_{i} \quad$ qat ran una ha, I am growing hungry.
dé wu di quétll, I am growing tired.
[ $\bar{d} \bar{p}$ ] ra $k \cdot \bar{e} n a \bar{e}^{\prime} n$, it is growing to be daylig't.

$$
[d \bar{e}] r \bar{i} s \bar{c}-t \bar{e} \cdot n a g s \text { ? did you see them? }
$$

dē $\vec{k} \cdot u k \cdot q^{\prime \prime} a t e n$, I shall leave.
di qat ri séné' $q$, you have saved me!
$d_{\bar{c}} q a g \bar{d} d \bar{e} ’ n$, I have gone.
$g a^{\prime} c u d^{\overline{0}} q a g \bar{d} d, \mathrm{I}$ wish to go.
dē ren at qna $q a$, I have eaten.
dè aq $\operatorname{tana} a^{\prime}$, I have drunk.
ku
ku wat, tall.
ku datl, heavs.
kn watl, small.
ku tla, stout.
$k u$ scems to imply a reference to personal appearance.
$k \cdots$, weather, out-of-doors:
$k \cdot \bar{u} \sin ^{\prime} t$, it is cold. $k \cdot \bar{u}$ re $t a$, it is warm. $k \cdot \bar{u} w a q u k$, it is dry.
$k \cdot \bar{u} g \bar{u}^{\prime} t s$, horizon, .probably belongs to this group. $k$ 'anyiqk-ūvatē', aurora; fire like out-of-doors colour.

$$
r a, r_{E}
$$

i $r e ~ n \bar{c} k$, you are sick. $h a r R n \tilde{e}^{\prime} g \bar{u} n$, we were sick. qat re ta uwa ha, I am sleepy.
$k \cdot \bar{u} t i t l e k$, it is wet.
$k \cdot u \quad t l i ~ g u t s$, it is cloudy.
$r \dot{E} k \cdot \bar{e}$, good.
$r \boldsymbol{r} s \bar{u}^{\prime}$, a short time ago.
$\boldsymbol{r e} d_{E t l \text {, heary. }}$
al whether the following ar
It is doubtful whether the following are derived from the same root:
at i ra qa, you have caten.
tō ra aqtc, we know.
$n a$
na $t \bar{e}$, far
ttētl kyē qat nu na tlitc̄̄n, I am growing weak.
) de ra ke na e $\bar{e} n$, it is growing to be daylight.
hin ra re na $t$ ' $\bar{n}$, the water begins to be warm.
lin rana s'st, the water begins to be cold.
$a q$ (1) $\bar{\imath} c$ (2) $n a$ (3) $n \bar{u}^{\prime} n \bar{c} k l^{\prime \prime}(4)$, if (4) my (1) father (2) should die (3). $k^{\prime} \cdot u$ na $t \bar{c}^{\prime} n n e \bar{c} k^{\prime}$, if he should leave.
From these examples it would seem that na designates the commencement of a certain state.
qat $n u$ ti $q u \bar{e}^{\prime} t l$, I am tired. $\quad n u t i t l e k$, it is wet. yiq ctuq ti $n \bar{e} k$, , I feel sick ( $y i q=$ like).
$n \cdot a$
a ka wa qats, clear sky.
wa quk, dry. na se ku datl? is it heavy? a ra ka na alan, it is snowing. $k \cdot \bar{e}$ ra $a$, it is daylight.
wu $\quad n u n \bar{c} k$, , he (absent) is sick.
tlītl qut nut nēke, I am not sick.
tlétl qat nuck'z', I am bàd.
tlētl wu detl, light (not heavy)
tlētl wu tli tsē̃, easy.
tlētl wu q cegōk, I cannot-
tlūgitl qat nu nēké? Am I not sick?
grotl qat $n u x n \overline{c k}$, may be I am sick.
$\bar{\imath}$ wu tli tsēngs? are you strong?
qat $n u$ nēk ${ }^{\prime}$, I am growing sick.
resiú wu nēk', I just got sick.
qat nu tlitsén, I am growing
strong.
qat $r u n \bar{e} q$, I recover from sick-
ness, I am saved.
qat $w u$ ti quítl, I am tired.
wu tli que, thin.
$\boldsymbol{n u} n a$, dead.
düg nu stanēn. it was raining.
has nu tō sūtē'n, we see them.

In the great majority of cases in which $w u$ is used the state (or action?) expressed by the verb is still incomplete, not yet or not longer existing, or existing at a distance. Thus it would appear that the particle $n u$ denotes the 'not actually being.' It seems doubtful whether the $w u$ of the last example can be classed with the rest. It is remarkable that this particle appears very frequently combined with others, especially so with $t i$ and $t t i$.

[^9]aka yè qaí, I put it on top of
$r \pi k ' e y \bar{e} k \cdot a$, he is a good man.
$t t \bar{\imath} t s e \bar{e} n y \bar{e} k \cdot a$, he is a strong man.
It may be that this is a rerbum substantirum; at least it seems possible to class all the examples given here in such a way. tlī
$t l \bar{z} \bar{u} n$, good-natured.
$t \bar{z} t s \bar{e} n$, strong.
$k \cdot \bar{u}$ tte guts, cloudy.
tl̄̃ wus, strong (rope).
$t t \bar{i} t s e \bar{e}$, difficult.
$c k \cdot{ }^{\circ} a q$ t $t \bar{z} n \bar{e} k^{c}$, I pretend to be sick.
$c k \cdot a q$ qa tlīqa, I pretend to cut.
tlīts'a, later on.
nu tli qun thin.
To these particles might be added one which frequently, although not regularly, precedes the future tense, and in some instances also the past. ${ }^{k y \bar{c}}$
kyē qat $k \cdot u k$ ra nēk ${ }^{4}$, I shall be sick.
tlētl hyé qat nu na tli tsēn, I am growing weak.
tlēgātl kyē qat $k \cdot u k n u$ nēk, am I not going to be sick?
tlētl kyē qat wu nēk‘tc, I have not been sick.
tlégitl kyē nēk'tcēn? have you not been sick ?
The following I found only in one single instance : $d \bar{u} g s \bar{e} t \bar{e}^{\prime} n$, it is raining.
$\bar{a}$ nu düg gané'n, the sun was shining, it was raining.

## Tenses.

Wemiaminov states that there are six tenses : present, imperfect, perfect, plusquamperfect, future, futurum exactum. My collections contain only the present, past (imperfect), and future tenses, which I give here in paradigmatic form :


In inflecting the transitive verb, the pronoun is placed immediately before the the subject : at qa qa, I the verb has an indefinite object, $a t$; which is placed before compound verbs which limiting the action as to mann of a stem denoting the action or state, and attributes two parts, and thus an apparent infixion originates: $s k \cdot a$ (1) $q a$ (2) $d a$ (3) ts'ē (4). I smoke $=$ mou
$k a$ (1) qa (2) tlqkitl (3), I rub with pestle =upon (1) I (2) aro nd (3) smoke (4). $t \bar{o}$ (1) $q a$ (2) $u_{q}$ (3), I (2) blow (3) into (1). upon (1) I (2) ru' (3).
The following forms must be explained in the same way, alth ugh I am not able to translate the elements of these words. The place of the pronoun is indicated by
a dash:
$k \cdot ' a n t-n a ~ n u k$, angry (k'an, angry).
$y \bar{e}-\sin _{\bar{e}} \bar{e}$, to do (si, to make).
$y \bar{u} q q^{\prime} \bar{a}$ 'tE $\tilde{n}$, to speak.
$a-t l^{\prime} e q$, to dance.
$k \cdot ' a n-r a i \bar{\prime}$, cross ( $k \cdot ' a n$, angry).
$s u-s^{\prime} \bar{c} t^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} n$, to think of-
$a$-djūn, to dream.
As a rule, the object is placed before the subject, but when the object is a pronoun and has a separate objective form the sequence may be reversed. Has, the it seems probable that it personal pronoun, always precedes the object; therefore .
also precedes the first part of compound verbs : has to uq, they blow into. ${ }^{\circ}$ Following is a paradigmatic table of the transitive verb in the present tense:
sētè'n, to see.


When the object is a substantive it precedes the subject:
hīn qa tana', I drink water. $\quad$ īn a tana', he drinks water.
Note.-In a great number of cases the first person singular of the transitive verb is qoa instead of $q a$. I am not quite certain how this form originates, but it seems to be a contraction of qa nu or of qa wa. It would seem that the third person-subject as well as object-takes this particle, and this would explain the qoa in qoa sétéc'n, he sees him. In certain cases it is evidently contracted from $q a$ ra, as in the perfect. I am, however, far from being able to explain the rules regulating the use of qoa and qa.
at qoa $q a$, I have eaten (from at quara. qa).
qoa sêtê' $n$, I see him.
qoa sétē'nén, I have seen it once.
qoa $a^{\prime} q \bar{e} n, \mathrm{I}$ have heard it once, occasionally.
 your father (somebody spoke of him).
$d \bar{e} k \cdot u g$ qoa gōd, I am going to go.
at $k \cdot u g$ qoa $q a$, I shall eat.
na $t l \bar{z} r \bar{e} d \bar{e} k \cdot u g \cdot q o a ~ t e ̄ n, ~ I ~ a m ~ g o i n g ~$ far away.
$k$ 'änt qoa nuk, I am angry.
The character of the past is $-g \bar{u} n,-g \cdot \bar{e} n$, or $-\bar{e} n$, according to the terminal sound of the verb. The tense formed by this suffix corresponds to both our imperfect and perfect:

> ₹qa sētén-èn, I saw you just now.
> (dè) $q a g \bar{d} d-e^{\prime} n$, I went.
> qoa $a^{\prime} q-\bar{e} n$, I heard it (once, occasionally). qa a'qtc-ēn, I have heard it (frequently).
$\bar{i}$ anē qa tēn'-ēn, I have seen your country (often). hin qa tan $\bar{u}^{\prime}-g \cdot \bar{e} n, ~ I ~ w a s ~ d r i n k i n g ~(w a t e r) . ~ . ~$ ara kūra dan-ē $n$ a'sé, it has been snowing. $d \bar{u} g \pi u$ stü' $n-\bar{e} n$, it has been raining. $\bar{u}$ rou $d \bar{u} g$ gan- $\bar{c} n$, the sun was shining.
Besides this, I found the following perfect forms:
qatc yē qa sīn $\bar{e}$, I have done it.
(dè ran) at qoa qa, I have eaten.
(dē) qa tana', I have drank.

## To eat, perfect.

Singular, 1st person, at qoa qa.
" 2nd ", at $\overline{2}$ raqu.

Plural, 1 st person, at $n u$ to ra qa.
" 2nd " at iri raqa.
" 3rd " has at nu ra qa.
It seems that this form agrees with Wemiaminov's perfect tense. It must be stated that in many instances the imperfect characteristic is dropped, and that thus a form originates which is identical with the present tense. The inflexion of aqtc, to know, is of interest regarding this point.

| ingula | , | rson | $q \bar{a} a q t c$. | Plural, | 1st |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| -," | 2nd | " | $\bar{\imath}$ ra aqtc. |  | 2nd |  |  |  |
| " | 3 rd | " | a ra aqtc. | " | 3rd | " |  |  |

This shows that the verb is evidently the perfect, $I$ have heard, and $r a$ appears to be the particle expressing a completed action (see p. 64).
The future tense is characterised by $k \cdot u g$, which is placed between the object and the subject.
at $k \cdot u g \cdot q a \operatorname{tana}, \mathrm{I}$ am going to drink.
(qat) k.ug qa gōa, I shall go.
$k \cdot u{ }^{\circ}$ qoa aq, I shall hear it.
are $k \cdot u g$ ra dän, it is going to snow.
$r e \bar{e}$ a $k \cdot u g \cdot d a g ~ g \bar{a} n$, the sun is going to shine.
$y \bar{e} k \cdot u g \cdot q o a \sin \bar{e}^{\prime}$, I shall do it.
(dē) k'ug qua gōd, I shall go.
$k \cdot u g \cdot q o a ~ t e ̄ n, I$ i shall leave.
dag $k \cdot u g \cdot{ }_{e} \bar{t} \bar{a}^{\prime} n$, it is going to rain.

To eat, future.
Singular, 1st person, at $k \cdot u g \cdot q a q a^{\prime}$
$\begin{array}{lll}" & \text { 2nd } \quad \text { at } k \cdot a g \cdot \frac{1}{i} q a(g E) . \\ " \quad \text { at } k \cdot u g \cdot q a(g E) .\end{array}$
Plural, 1st person, at kug. tü q́a (gs).
" 2nd ", at $k \cdot u g r^{i} q a(g E)$.
" 3rd ", has at k•ug. a qa.
To see, fature.

I shall see.
me
you
(re $) \bar{i} k \cdot ' q o a ~ s e ̄ t e ̄ ' n . ~$
him (rē) $k \cdot{ }^{\prime} q a$ sētē'n.
ys (re)rī $\overline{k \cdot \prime \text { 'qoa sētén. }}$
them (re) hask'qoa sētē'n.

You will see.
(re) qat $k \cdot a ́ g \cdot r i \bar{i} s \bar{c} t \bar{e} ' n$.
(re) k'' rī sc̄̀tén.

(rē) has k:ag• $r \bar{i} s \bar{c} t \bar{c} \prime \prime$.

It seems that $k \cdot u g \cdot$ is sometimes abbreviated, and in other instances asssumes the form $k \cdot a g \cdot$. The initial $r \bar{e}$ is not necessary for forming the plural. Ky $\bar{e}$ (see p. 65) is very frequently used in connection with future forms.

## Interrogative.

The interrogative is formed by the particle agz, which is attached to the verb, hut. in case the latter is accompanied by an adverb it follows the latter.

## Intransitive Verb. <br> To te sick, present.


Plural, 1st ferson, ha ra nēk $a g e$ ?
" 2nd ", rīra nēk' age?

Imperfect. qat négun age? was I sick? \&c.

Future.
(kyē) qat $k \cdot u g \cdot r a n \bar{e} \bar{k}^{c} a g E$ ? am I going to be sick?

## Transitive Verb.

qat rī sītē'n age? do you see me? rī sētén $\operatorname{age}(\mathrm{g})$ ? do you see him?
ha ri sèté̀n age? do you see us? has ri gētền $^{\prime}$ age? do you see them?

## Imperfect.



ha rī sêtēné'n age? did you see us?
Here are a few instances in which age follows the adverb:
sērē'nk age rī ha kug. rī sētē'n? will you see us to-morrow?
$\operatorname{tatge}^{\prime}$ age rà sétén' $n$ ? did you see him yesterday?
Also: aq hitī age $^{\prime} r_{E} k^{\prime} E^{\prime}$ ? is my house all right?
In interrogative sentences $a g_{E}$ stands for our verbum substantirum (see p. 69).
aq ari age? is that mine?
aq hiti age? is that my house?
In order to emphasise the question, it may be repeated in the beginning of the sentence:
age aq hiti age? is that my house?
After an interrogative pronoun the interrogative particle is not used :
tūse i djunēn? what did you dream?

## Imperative.

- I found two forms of imperative; one formed by the suffix $-d_{E}$, the other by $k \cdot a$ :
- $d \mathrm{~s}$ : at qadm'! eat!
at $\bar{r} \bar{\tau} q a d E^{\prime}$ ! eat! (plural)
$k \cdot a: \quad k \cdot a$ sētét $n /$ look here I
a
$y e \bar{e} k \cdot a \sin \overline{e^{\prime}}$ ! do it !
k.a snēq! save him! qat k•a snēq! save me !
$c \bar{e} n d E^{\prime}$ ! get up !
qat k'a sētē'n! look at me! $k \cdot a$ sētē'n! look at him ! ha k'a sētét n! look at us! has $k \cdot a$ sété'n! look at them 1 qat a k:aq sēté'n! let him look at me! rī $k \cdot a$ tu tlitē'n! let us look at you ! $a d \bar{e} k \cdot a$ sia'q! listen now! at k:a tō qa! let us eat!

Both forms are in some instances combined :
at $k \cdot a$ gadE' 1 let him eat ! at k at gadz' 1 let us eat !
The following forms are doubtful: suqs'ét'e'n! think of it! hät'ētlk'é'n! look here!

## Conditional.

The conditional has the suffix -nēk'. It will be seen from the following examples that the verbs frequently take the particle $n a$ in this mood. This agrees well with our supposition that the latter denctes the commencement of a state.
dūg sētannēk ${ }^{\prime \prime}$, tlētl ha dē $k \cdot u g \cdot n \cdot a ~ g \bar{o} d$, if it rains, I shall not come.

$g E n \bar{e} k^{\prime} n \bar{e} k^{\cdot}, t l \bar{e} t l a k \cdot u g \cdot a t l \bar{e} ' q$, if he is sick, I shall not dance.
qat $g E n \bar{e} \bar{k}^{\top} n \bar{e} \bar{k} \bar{k}^{\cdot}$, if I am sick, . . . .
qat ran hanêk'‘, if I am hungry, . . . .
$\overline{\text { z}}$ ga sētē'nnēk ${ }^{\prime}$, if I see you,
$t l^{l} \bar{\imath} q o n ~ s e \bar{e} t \bar{e} ’ n n e \bar{e} k \cdot ‘$, if I do not see you, . . . .
tr? qua séte'nnēk‘, if I do not see him, . . . .


The following are constructed with na：
$k^{k} u n a t e{ }^{\prime} u n \bar{e} k^{\prime}$, aq tōru kyé $k \cdot u g \cdot n u$ nēk', if he leaves, my mind will be sick.
$k \cdot u n i t e \bar{e}^{\prime} n n \bar{e} k \cdot '$, if you should leave.
$t l$ (1) $a q$ (2) $\bar{\imath} c$ (3) ue $n u$ na (4), runūn katlēqē'n (5), if (4) my (2) father (3)
were not (1) dead ( 4 ), I should dance ( 5 ).

## Negatife．

The negative is formed by $t l \bar{e} t l$ ，not．The negative has always the particle $n u$ ． tlētl qait nu nēk＇，I am not sick． tlētl qat nu nēgun，I have not been sick．
In the interrogative negative the interrogative particle follows the negative，and both are contracted into tlëgītl：
tlēgritl qat nu nēk＇？am I not sick？
tlēgītl kyē qat．krug nu nēk＇？am I not going to be sick？

## Imperative Negative．


Derivatives．
Undoubtedly there exist a considerable number of derivatives in Tlingit．It seems probable that the majority of these derivatives are formed by means of particles． I shall first give a few examples of the use of these particles，and the change they effect in the meaning of the verb：
$r E n \bar{c} k^{\kappa}$ ，he（present）is sick．
$n u$ nēk，he（absent）is sick；he is growing sick．
 $c k ' a q a$ tlī $q a$ ，I pretend to eat．
re $d_{s t l}$ ，heary．
tだヒll nu detl，not heavy． $k \bar{u} d \mathrm{E} t l$ ，heavy（referring to man）．

The following seem to be derivatives in the proper meaning of that term ：

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
s \bar{c}- & t \bar{e} n, \text { to look; } \\
& a q, \text { to hear; } \\
t t \bar{\imath}- & t \bar{e} R, \text { to see; } \\
-t c & a q, \text { to hear; } \\
& n \bar{c} k{ }^{\circ}, \text { sick; } ;
\end{array}
$$

sēté＇$n$ ，to see． $s \bar{e} a^{\prime} q$ ，to listen． qa tlでた ér $^{\prime} n$ ，I look at it． aqtc，to know．
$n \bar{e} k ' t c$ ，to be sick a long time．

There are some sentences that seem to indicate the existen＇ce of a dubitative formed by means of the interrogative particle ：
gutl (1) Ts'ötsQE'n (2) age (3) noe' (4), may be (1, 3) you (4) are a Tsimshian (2);
but the same may be expressed simply with gutl：
gutl（1）Ts＇otsqE＇n（2）noE＇（3），may be（1）you（3）are a Tsimshian（2）．
gutl（1）qat（2）nu nēk•（3），may be（1）I（2）am sick（3）．
The passive seems to be formed by means of the particle $r u$ and the stem：
qat $r u n \bar{e} q$ ，I am saved；but this appears doubtful，as the active form， $\sin n \bar{e} q$ ， to save，may be compound and mean ：to make saved．
Note．－A circumscriptive inflexion of the verb is very frequent．It is formed by using the word（my，your，his）＇mind＇instead of the pronoun：
$a q$ töru re $k E^{\prime}$ ，I am glad $=\mathrm{my}$ mind is good．
aq tor $\bar{u}$ sig $\bar{o}$ at $q a$ ，I wish to eat $=m y$ mind desires to eat．

## Verbum Substantivum．

It was mentioned above that the particle $y \bar{e}$ may have the meaning of the rerbum substantirum．Undoubtedly the demonstrative $a$ is frequently used in this way： hīt a tlēna，that is a large house．
$\bar{\imath} h \bar{z} t i ~ a s i a, ~ t h a t ~ i s ~ y o u r ~ h o u s e . ~$
The independent pronoun stands also for the pronoun and rerbum substantirum： $q a t$, it is $\mathbf{I}$.

Tlingit woe＇，you are a Tlingit．

## The Adverb.

The adverb stands mostly at the beginning of the sentence :

> yüridet has rī sēté'n, you see them now.
> resu' qat wu nék', I just got sick.
> tetge' age' ri sētẻ'n? did you see him yesterday?
> tlīts'ē aq $\bar{u}^{\prime} n \bar{e} k \cdot u g \cdot r \bar{i} s \bar{c} t \bar{e} ' n$, later on you will see my country.

In a few cases it stands at the end of the sentence:
qat (1) k:anickidēq (2) sité' (3), I am (1) very (3) poor (2).

## Formation of Words.

It was mentioned above that compound words are very frequent, and I believe that all words can be reduced to monosyllabic stems. In many cases it is evident tbat the word is a compound, although we are not able to determine the meaning of the elements. Excepting the particles referred to above (p.64), it seems that the composing elements may occur independently as well as forming part of other words. For instance, riä'ti, place forsometbing, occurs both independently and as a constituent of many words :
$t^{\prime} \bar{e} k ' a$ riä'ti, mortar = pestle place. : $\quad k^{\prime} \cdot{ }^{\prime} \bar{u}^{\prime} t l$ ri $\bar{u}^{\prime} t i$, bed $=$ feather place.
From the same stem are derived the following:

> ya'k'rerē't. canve place.
> kaqE'guarét, mortar = pestle place. tōuqsere't, whistle = place into which one blows. gutsrēe $(t)$, heaven = cloud place.
> g'an $\bar{e} t \bar{e}^{\prime}$, fire place. tl'ēneté, beach = sand place.

Many adjectives are compounds of $t l \bar{e}(t l)$, being merely a negation of their opposite:
tlētl $w u$ ck'E, bad, and tl'nu ck'E, ugly.
tlētl nu tlītsēn, weak.
tlētl $n u d_{\text {Etl }}$, light.
Probably also:
$k u$ natl, short (see $k u n a t$, long).
tlk $\cdot a t c k$, lame. $t k \cdot \delta \bar{c} t \bar{e} n$, blind ( $t \bar{e} n$, to see). $t l k \cdot o ̄ t l ' a q t, \operatorname{deaf}(a q$, to hear).
I give finally a collection of sentences:
hahēa qa tana' ! give me to drink!
a $k u q a t l i q \bar{e} t l$, I am afraid.
aqag.a $k \cdot a q c \bar{e} н i^{\prime} t$, I paint my face.

at qa qa rīt aq tōrū te, I want to eat.
at qa age $\bar{\imath}$ tōr $\bar{u}$ s $\bar{g} g \bar{o}^{\prime}$ ? do you wish to eat ?
aq torū sīgō at qa, I wish to eat.
aq tōru wa sig $\bar{o}^{\prime}$ at qoa qū rit, I wish to eat.
tlētl aq tīru na wu sigō qat nu nék', I do not like to be sick.
gācu dē qat nu née qēk', I should like to be well.
gācu ( $\left.n \cdot o \varepsilon^{\prime}\right) r \bar{\imath}$ gōd (yua'), I wish you would go.
gācu clē qa gōd, I wish to go.
gacu' tlingit $k \cdot ' a q a a q t c$, I wish I understood the Tlingit.
qa cegōk rūndat' ${ }^{\prime} t c$, I can swim.
tlētl nu qa cegōk rāndat'e'tc, I cannot swim.
$t l \bar{e} t l$ a dē at qoa qa rīrē, I cannot eat.
tcütl kyēru qa sizyikr, I haul in halibut (halibut line I haul in).
lītk-tō re qoa gōd, I go to the houses.
hītk'to re a n $\bar{e}$ g $\bar{o} d$, he goes to the houses.
tlétl $\overline{\text { ₹ tla }}$ tl' $v k \cdot q \bar{e} k$ ! don't make it wet !
$r{ }^{2}$ tli tle'k'! don't make it wet!
( $t c c^{\prime} \varepsilon$ ) ck'a qa $t l \bar{\imath} n \bar{e} k^{\top}$, I pretend to be sick.
$c k \cdot ' a q a$ tli qa, I pretend to eat.
$T s^{\prime} \bar{o} t s Q F^{\prime} n q c$ qa tlīe' $q$, I pretend to be a Tsimshian.

> I do not know.
> tlētl ta qoakj qat nëke, I fear I am sick (I am not sure I am sick). gutl hütc yē ancu sinē, marbe he has done it.
> $x \bar{e}$ atqa qat sī nēk', that food makes me sick.
> qat $k^{\cdot}$ asnēq ! kitc' anag $\bar{a}^{\prime} t k \cdot \bar{o} y \bar{e} k^{c}$ ! save me, 0 rainbow !
> wötc qat rou sënē' $q$ ! It is he who saved me!
> ara ka nadan, it is snowing.
> ara ka na danēn $a^{\prime} s \bar{e}$. it has been snowing.
> ara $k \cdot u g$ : wa dar, it is going to snow.
> tlētl qat ca cqarru! no hair is on my head.
> aq $k$ ' $\overline{0} s$ tüh re nēk', my foot is sore.
> $s u q^{\cdot} s^{\prime} \bar{e} t E^{\prime} n$, I think of him.
> $\bar{i} s u q s^{\prime} \bar{e} t^{\prime} \varepsilon^{\prime} n$, I think of you.
> wūcté' $n$ at to ta qa, we eat together.
> $c^{\prime} \bar{\imath} t l k ' \varepsilon^{\prime} t l$, stop crying!
> nutc kike't has ta $k \cdot \tilde{e x}$, they sit opposite each other.
> John es kikE't qaa', John is opposite to me.
> wutce'n $\bar{u} n k a$ de kaq to $\bar{a}^{\prime} t$, we go together to the town.
> nutcé'n ànka dē sk•uqk $\cdot a \bar{a}^{\prime} t$, they go together to the town.
> ceda hōtc yē anaq si'né ! let him do it !
> $h \bar{\imath} n q a r \bar{e} k \cdot u g \cdot q o a t e!$ I am going to put you into the water.
> hīn $q a \bar{\imath} r E^{\prime} q o a t \bar{e}$, I put your face into the water (I baptise you).

It will be seen from these remarks and examples how much remains to be done in this language. It is evident that the grammatical structure cannot be understood until the words bave been more closely studied and we know the meaning of their components and of the particles which are so important in the finflexion of the verb. From what we know, it appears that the particles and pronouns are placed between the components of words. I do not think there is a real infixion. The independence which the components retain is one of the most remarkable features of this language.

$$
\begin{gathered}
\text { II. HAIDA, } \\
\text { Obtained from Wīha, a natixe of Skidegate (Tlk a gyitl), and Mrs. Wrankin, a half. } \\
\text { blood Indian, living in Lictoria. } \\
\text { PHONETICS. }
\end{gathered}
$$

Vowels: a, (a), e, E, i, ठ, u.
Consonants: $\quad \begin{aligned} & \mathrm{d}, \mathrm{t} ; \mathrm{gy}, \mathrm{ky} ; \mathrm{g}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}^{\mathbf{c}} ; \mathrm{g}, \mathrm{k} ; \mathrm{r}, \mathrm{q} ; \mathrm{h}, \mathrm{H}, \mathrm{y} \text {; } \\ & \mathrm{m}, \mathrm{n}, \tilde{\mathrm{n}} ; \mathrm{w} ; \mathrm{s},(\mathrm{dz}), \mathrm{ts} ; \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{dj}, \mathrm{tc} ; \mathrm{l}, \mathrm{dl}, \mathrm{tl} .\end{aligned}$
There is only one labial, $m$, which does not occur as an initial sound except in a few words which are borrowed from the Tsimshian. The $m$ is not the pure English $m$, but closely related to $\tilde{n}$, from which it is distinguished with great diticulty, the lips being not perfectly closed. The difference between surds and sonants is still slighter than in Tlingit, it being in most cases impossible to determine whether a sound is the one or the other. I believe a thorough study of the language would show that it would be proper to use only one letter for the dentals and one for the gutturals, the slight variations of which cause in our ear the sensation of surds and sonants. The $r$ is very guttural, but has more of a trill than in Tlingit. Therefore it is easily distinguished from the $n$. The hiatus is very frequent, and occurs after all consonants. In the beginning of words I found the following combinations of consonants: $l, d l, t l$, followed by a guttural, and $t, \tilde{n}$, followed by $g$ (one instance); $s$ followed by any consonant, except $s, d z, t s, e, d j, t c$. Regarding the latter, it must be stated that $s$ frequently does not belong to the stem; $t$ is followed by $h$. I found the following corcbinations of consonants terminating words:
ks
$\mathrm{nq} \quad \mathrm{ns}$

| sk | sk. | nq |  |
| :--- | :--- | ---: | ---: |
| tsk |  |  |  |
| th |  |  |  |
| tlk | tlk. |  | ln |

All letters can be initial and terminal sounds. (Regarding $m$ see above.) Combinations of consonants are very rare.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES. THE NOUN.

The Haida language has no grammatical sex, and no separate forms for singular and plural. When it is necessary or desirable to state expressly that the plural is meant, $s k \bar{o} l$ (a group of) is added when human beings are referred to; $k \cdot o a^{\prime} n$ in all other cases. The latter may also be applied to human beings.
djū'ata skül, women.
$\bar{e} t l$ sk $\bar{l} \lg a$, it is we.
$\bar{c} t l$ gyitina skell yuk'nga, we belong to the eagle gens.
$q \bar{a}^{\prime}$ etqa skēl yūu$a^{\prime} n$, many people ; but also-
ts'eñ $k \cdot o a^{\prime} n$, beavers.
$k \cdot \cdot \bar{c} t k \cdot v a ' n$, trees.
na k.oan, houses.
$q \bar{u}^{\prime} c t q a$ k.oan yū'an, many people.

I have not found any indication of cases. Compound nouns are as frequent as they are in the Tlingit language, and they are composed in the same way, the components being placed side by side :
gy'atl d'ame'l, ankle = leg knuckle.
gy'atl gya, dancing leggings = leg ornament.
tlkyan $\bar{k} \cdot \bar{u}^{\prime} i t l a$, wood dish.
Tlk: a gyitl, stone beach, name of Skidegate village.
$k^{\prime} \cdot \bar{o} t l t a l r a \bar{a} \cdot e r a$, thief $=$ steal master.
sqū'na dä'tzeñ, hat with carving of Delphinus orca.
The following examples consist of three components:
g'at k'al gyä'atk, deer-skin blanket.
$q \bar{e}^{\prime} t l e n \tilde{n} g^{\prime} \cdot a \bar{u} \bar{u} d \bar{u}^{\prime} o$, pipe $=$ mouth smoke box.
$s l \bar{u} ' g u l k^{\prime} \cdot a^{\prime} t s \bar{c} k \cdot \cdot \bar{e} d \bar{u}^{\prime}$, carved spoon-spoon head figure.
ga ta $t a{ }^{\prime} n$, table $=$ it eat instrument.
Local adverbs are frequently placed between the components of the word, which always retain their independence : $\boldsymbol{\mu} \bar{\imath} u^{\prime} n s \bar{e} g \cdot a t a^{\prime}=$ wing top white (name of a bird).

The names of several colours are evidently composed words : gō tlratl, blue ; gan tlratl, yellow ; aqa tlratl, many-coloured.

## THE ADJECTIVE.

The adjective is placed after the substantive to which it belongs :
gal $y \bar{u}^{\prime} k \overline{0}$, midnight $=$ night half.
$\bar{a} d l d z i^{\prime} n d a$, oar = long paddle.
$l \bar{u} \prime n a g s^{\prime} t s \bar{u}$, small town.
$\ell_{\bar{u}}{ }^{\prime} n a y \bar{u}^{\prime} a n$, large town. ian tlratl, black cloud. ta'ñga $g^{\prime} \bar{u}^{\prime} g a$, salt = dry ocean.

The adjective is rarely used alone ; if it has no noun;to which it belongs, gyina, something, is added :

> gyina grada, something white.
> gyina dū'ranga, something bad.
> gyina k'a'lra, something different, another.

NUMERALS.
Cardinal Numbers.

1, squun, sqa'sgō, sqoū'nseñ.
2, stĩn.
3, dlk• 'u'nutl.
4, sta'nseñ.
5, tlētl.
6, dlk'uñ̄'utl.
7, dzi'gura.
8, sta'nseñra.
9, tläleñ sqoa'nseñ.
10, thū'atl.
11, tlāa'atl wogè', or sqoä'nseñ.
20, lag'usqaa'nëgo.

30, thä'lē dlk'u'nutl.
40, tlü'lē sta'nseñ.
50, tlä'lē tlé'etl.
60, tlū'lē dlk'unō'utl.
70, thü' $\bar{l} \bar{e} d z i ' g u r a$.
80, tlälé sta'nseñra.
90, tlū̆'lē thä'leñ sqoū'nseñgó.
100, lu'gua tlū'atl.
200, lü'gua stīn.
300, $l \overline{\bar{u}^{\prime}}$ gua dlk $\cdot u^{\prime} n u t l$.
900, $\downarrow \bar{a}^{\prime}$ gua $t \bar{a} \bar{u}^{\prime} l_{E n} \tilde{n}$ sqoä'nsEñgo.
$1,000, \bar{a}^{\prime} g u a$ tlā'lē $t l \bar{a} ' a t l \bar{l}$.

Evidently four is second two, six the second three, eight the second four, and five and ten are also derived from the same stem, perhaps ( 8 ) $t l$, hand. The formation of four corresponds to that of the same number in Tlingit (see p. 61). I found no double furms of numerals, except for one: sqoü'usE $\tilde{n}$ is the word generally used; $s q a^{\prime} s g \bar{o}$ is used in counting divisions of time:
$t \bar{u}^{\prime} d a$ sqa'sg $\overline{0}$, one year.
g'al sqa'sg, one night.
sEn sqa'sg $\overline{0}$, one day, also all day long.

In counting objects classifying words are used very extensively :
$n a$ thēi sti$\tilde{n}$, two (sleep) houses.
thécidūn $g \cdot a$ sqoū'nseñ, one (flat) bed.
thécidūn tlg a sqoü'nseñ, one (frame) bed.
$k \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime} i t l a k \cdot a$ stiñ, two (open) dishes.
tlō $k \cdot a$ stiñ, two (open) canoes.
tlō gi stīn, two (?) canoes.
tlk: a $g \cdot{ }^{\prime}{ }^{\prime}$ is sqoünseñ, one (round) stone.
$k^{\prime} \cdot \bar{e} i=$ stiñ, steamboat, two (ship) steamboats.
tlk é it sta sqoü'nsen, one (?) bow.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { gatatü'n tlga sqoū'nseñ, one (with legs) table. }
\end{aligned}
$$

No such classifying words are used in counting animals and divisions of time. I am unable to account for the following double form:

Ordinal Numbers.
The following ordinal numbers seem to me very doubtful:
$d e \bar{e} k u n a^{\prime} c t$, the first. $d \bar{e} t l \bar{u} \bar{u}^{\prime} a$, the second. länagö'st, the third.
lätlalä'nä, the fourth.
läna göstlü'na, the fifth.

So far as I was able to discover, the cardinal numbers are generally used in place of ordinal numbers.

## Numeral Adverbs.

The numeral adverbs are formed by adding the suffix -gen to the cardinal numbers.

$$
\text { sqoū'nseñgen, once. } \quad \text { stī'ñgen, twice. }
$$

## Distributive Numbers.

These are also expressed by the cardinal numbers. For 'one' the form squn is used :
squn qaula' $\tilde{n}$ tla ēsta $g \cdot \bar{o}^{\prime} g a n \bar{e}$, I give one to each. stī̃ qaula' $\tilde{n}$ tla ēsta $g \cdot o^{\prime} g a n \bar{e},\lceil$ give two to each.

## THE PRONOUN.

## Personal Pronoun.

There are two forms of the personal pronoun exactly alike in character to those found in Tlingit: the former denoting simply the person, the second denoting that the person is one among many. In Haida the latter is used for inflecting the transitive verb, the former for inflecting the intransitive verb. The objective case of the pronoun is the same as the intransitive prononn. This would make it probable that the intransitive verb is indeed impersonal, if it were not for the fact that the same form is used for the ordinary pronoun.

Personal Pronoun.

|  | Ordinary | Selective | Intransitive | Transitive |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  |  |  | Subjective | Objective |
| Singular, 1st person | dēa | tlà'a | dē | tla, tl | dē |
| 2nd " | dE'ña | dā'a | deñ |  | d En |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Plural, lst person | citla $^{\text {cta }}$ | d'ale'ñga | ètl | d'alE' ${ }^{\text {d }}$ | ētl |
| , " 2nd " |  | dale'ñga lā'a | dale'ñ la | $\begin{aligned} & \text { dāle'ñ } \\ & \text { la.l } \end{aligned}$ | dāle'ñ $\mathrm{la}$ |

Note 1.-The $a$ at the end of the ordinary and selective forms is the same $a$ which is affixed to all words when used independently, and also in other cases where it seems to stand merely for reasons of euphony.

Note 2.-The $a$ at the end of $t l a$ and $l a$, when the subject of transitive verbs, seems to be frequently dropped, or at least to be pronounced very indistinctly.

## Demonstrative Pronoun.

There are a number of words which take the place of demonstrative pronouns, which, however, seem to be compounds. I have not referred to the use of an article, as it seems to be really the demonstrative pronoun. It is $n$ or $n E \tilde{n}$. Here are a few examples:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
n \text { dj’a'ata, a woman. } & n E \tilde{n} g \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime} q a, \text { a baby. } \\
n \text { squá'g'a, a shaman. } & n \in \tilde{n} \text { sqoa } n s E \tilde{n} \text {, one man. }
\end{array}
$$

$n E \tilde{n} \bar{E}^{\prime} t l e n ̃ g a$, a man.
The last example is suggestive of the origin of this article, which, however, is very seldom used.

This article, combined with èts, then forms the demonstrative which is most frequently used: nēts, to which the terminal $a$ is frequently added: nē'tsa. To this a prefix $a$, of unknown origin, is frequently added: anéts $a$. These three forms mean 'this'; $n a$ (denoting distance) prefixed makes them 'that.'

$$
\text { anēts nürau } \bar{e}^{\prime} t s i \text {, this is his house, it is this man's house. }
$$ nanēts näraul étsi, this is his house, it is that man's house.

We also find $n e n$, with and without the prefix $a$, used in this sense : a néz $d_{j} j^{\prime} a^{\prime}$ atas $n \tilde{u}^{\prime} r a u \tilde{e}^{\prime} t s i$, it is this woman's house.
I find besides this the plural form stlda and astlda, and tsk'a' $\bar{e}$ for 'these,' which I am unable to explain.

Note.-The prefix $a$ occurs also in temporal adverbs and with the personal pronoun, third person:

```
a-tlsta, some time ago. a-umi\overline{u}'t, now.
a-la é'tsisgua da kiv\tilde{n}? do you see him? a-d\overline{u}'rgatl, yesterday.
```

Note.-The use of $\boldsymbol{x c a}$ as denoting distance will best be seen from the following examples:
wa $t \overline{\sigma^{\prime}}$ qen, all (distant).
ra $t_{E l}$ sk $\bar{l} l$, many people (distant).

na nüra tlgai é'tsisgua da $k \cdot i n ̃$ ? do you see my land there? gyīstō na $\bar{e}^{\prime} t s E \tilde{n}$ ? who is that? natcgua gyina étsisgua da $k \cdot i n \tilde{n}$ ? do you see anything there? ra nā ēts tla $k \cdot i^{\prime} \tilde{n g a}$, I see a house there.

## Possessive Pronoun.

The possessive pronoun has various forms, the use of which is very difficult to understand. As the material which I have collected is not sufficient for a satisfactory explanation of the use of this pronoun, I must confine myself to giving examples of the various forms, illustrating their use.

The simplest form of the possessive pronoun is identical with the objective form of the personal pronoun. It precedes the substantive, to which is added the suffix $\boldsymbol{r a}$ :

- Singular, 1 st person, $\begin{aligned} & \text { 2nd } \\ & d_{E} \tilde{n}-r a .\end{aligned}$ " 2nd ", $\quad$ leñ-ra
Plural, lst person, ètl-ra.
$d \bar{e} k \cdot u \bar{n}-r a$, my father.
", 3nd ", lalen-ra.

In certain compound words the elements are not simply placed side by side, but the possessive form is used, corresponding to our genitive. This, however, seems to be the case only when the object is really possessed:

$$
l \bar{a}^{\prime} n a \bar{u}^{\prime} \text { ora, chief = town mother. } \quad \text { djāata } q^{\bar{a}^{\prime} t r a, ~ t h e ~ w o m a n ' s ~ f a t h e r . ~}
$$

The full form of the possessive pronoun in indicative sentences is :

> Singular, lst person, gyagen-gai
> Plural, 1st person, ètl gya'ra-gai
> $" \quad$ 2nd " den gyā'ra-gai $\quad$ 3rd $\quad$ 2nd ", dalv

Examples:
kua'é gya'gen nägai da $k \cdot i^{\prime} n g \cdot a s g a$, later on you will see my house. gya'gen n $\tilde{a}^{\prime} g a i$, it is my house.
$\bar{d} \tilde{n}$ gy $\bar{u}^{\prime} r a n \bar{u}^{\prime} g a i g u a \bar{e} t s ?$ is that your house?
gem gya'gen étsranga, it is not mine.
The same form with the terminal vowel $\bar{o}$ is used for the substantive possessive pronoun :
gya'gen̄̄, mine.
$d_{E \tilde{n}} g y \bar{a}^{\prime} r a \overline{0}$, yours. dalE' $\tilde{n} g y \bar{a}^{\prime} r a \overline{0}$, yours.
$l$ gyä'raj, his.
$\bar{e} t l$ gyä'rā̃, ours.
la yyü'rā̀, theirs.

The second form of the possessive pronoun is the following:


Note.-In one instance I found for the second person singular: tlñra-gai.
In some instances this second form and the first are used indiscriminately :
$\left.\begin{array}{l}\text { Kua'è gya'gen nügai da } k \cdot i^{\prime} \tilde{n g} \cdot a s g a \\ k u a^{\prime} \bar{e} \text { nüra nūgai da } k \cdot i^{\prime} \tilde{n} g \cdot a s g a\end{array}\right\}$ later on you will see my house.
In other cases the first form must not be used, but I did not succeed in discovering the rule. The second form serves also as a substantive possessive pronoun:
$n \bar{u}^{\prime}$ ragua, is it mine?
$n \bar{u}^{\prime} r a g u a \operatorname{la} d a k \cdot i \pi$, do you see mine?
tlgaigua nüra da $k \cdot i \tilde{n}$, do you see my land?
la ra tla lü'ra ista ! give his to him! $^{\prime}$
hala! dē gi nä'ra ista! give me mine!
dürrgatl nüra nü'gai da $k \cdot i^{\prime} n g \cdot a s g a$, to-morrow you will see my house.
gy $\bar{\imath} \cdot n \bar{u} n \bar{a}^{\prime} r a \bar{a}^{\prime} l a i \bar{e}^{\prime} t s e \tilde{n}$ ? where is my paddle?
Note.-The suffix -gai is sometimes contracted with the substa tive to which it is affixed:

> tlowai for tlögai, canoe. for tlgogai, country.
> qatai for qatgai, father.

In addressing a person only the suffix -gai is used:
$k \cdot u^{\prime} \tilde{n} g a i!$ my father! dü'gai! my younger brother !
In a few instances I found the suffix -rao used for expressing the relation of possession. It is evidently of the same origin as the second part of gyádrā (see above).

[^10]Note.-I found a peculiar possessive form in a few sentences, which, it would seem, is used where object and subject are the same person:
$k^{\prime} a^{7} a \tilde{n}$ tl tlñga, I wash my skin.
quangañ la tlñga, he washes his face.
tlgañ k.a tl i'sg'asga, I shall go to my country.
tlgañ $t l$ k-iñg asga, I shall see my country.

## THE VERB.

In discussing the pronoun we stated that there are two forms, one for the transitive, the other for the intransitive verb, the latter being identical with the objective case of the transitive pronoun. This makes it probable that the intransitive verb may be impersonal. The division of transitive and intransitive verbs is, of course, peculiar to the language, but it will be found very much like that observed in Tlingit. Following is a list of intransitive and transitive verbs in the first person singular:

## Intransitive Verbs.

dē $q \bar{u}^{\prime} e t q a g a, \mathrm{I}$ am a Haida. $d \bar{c} \bar{c} g y \bar{\imath} t i n u u^{\prime} g a$, I belong to the eagle gens. $d \bar{e} s t{ }^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} g a, \mathrm{I}$ am sick. dē $\bar{u}$ 'g $g a$, I am well. dè lgilgu, I recover from sickness. dè $\tilde{n} g a i s t l m \tilde{n}, \mathrm{I}$ recover from sickness.
$d \bar{e} k^{\prime} \cdot \bar{e}^{\prime} t a$, I am hungry.
$d \bar{e} k \cdot{ }^{\prime} \bar{u}{ }^{\prime} \dot{a} \bar{u} g a, \mathrm{I}$ am thirsty.
dè stātlga, I like.
de $u^{\prime} u s \overline{e s t g a, ~ I ~ k n o w ~ t o-~}$
dè ran(?), I have.
$d \bar{e} \bar{k} \cdot \mathfrak{a} \bar{e} s k i d \bar{a}^{\prime} g a, ~ I ~ f o r g e t . ~$

## Transitive Verbs.

```
tla sk\cdotagè'tlga, I cry.
tla нia'tlga, I dance.
tla u\overline{u}'ga, I eat with somebody.
tla ë'sta, I give.
tla k\cdotü'ga, I go.
tla dä'raga, I have.
tla gu\overline{de'}
tla tè'aqan, I kill.
tla k'\vec{a}'ga, I laugh.
```

tla sk•agè'tlga, I cry.
tla нia'tlga, I dance.
tla ésta, I give.
tla $k \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime} g a, \mathrm{I}$ go.
tla dü'raga, I have.
tla gūde' $\tilde{n}$, I hear.
tla $k \bar{a}^{\prime} g a$, I laugh.
tla qutlga, I drink.
tla ga taga, I eat (it).
tla $g$ - ${ }^{\prime}$ 'tlraga, I make.
$t l k \cdot i n g a$, I see.

tla skungude'ngen, I smell.
tla k'è'tlkulga, I talk.
tla $g \bar{u}^{\prime} d E n$ (see $d \bar{e} g \bar{u}^{\prime} d E n r a$ ), I think.
$t l$ tiñga, I wash.

I found four tenses : the present, imperfect, perfect, and future; and five moods: the indicative, interrogative, negative, imperative, and infinitive. I have no examples of the conjunctive and conditional which make their use sufficiently clear. I shall first give the tenses of the intransitive verb in a paradigmatic form :
$s t^{\prime} \bar{e}$, sick.

| - | Present tense | Imperfect | Perfect | Future ${ }^{1}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Singular, 1 st person " vd " | dē stè̉ga deñ stéégagen | dè st'égan dEñ st'ēgagan | dè st'ēgranē deñ st'è'ganè | dē stè̀ rasga deñ ste'érasga and stée rasaì |
| $\begin{array}{ccc}  & \text { 3rd } & \\ & \text { Plural } & \text { rst } \\ \text { " } & \text { 2nd } \end{array},$ | 1 st'ēga êtl st'êga dalE'in st'ē'gagen | 1 stēgan étl stéegan daleñ ste'e'gagan | 1 st'èganē ētl stéégane daleñ st'éc'ganē | 1 st'ē'rasga êtl st'ētrasga duleñ st'e'rasga and |
| 3rd | 1 stėtrōga |  | 1 st'èrơo'ganē | 1 st 'egr'uasga |

In inflecting the transitive verb the pronoun is placed immediately before the verb. In some instances the verb has an indefinite object, ga, exactly corresponding to the same indefinite object in Tlingit (see p. 65). It is placed between the subject and the verb: tla ga ta, I eat it. As a rule, the object is placed before the subject, but when the object is a pronoun and has a separate objective form (1st, 2nd, person singular, 1st person plural) the sequence may be reversed. Following is a paradigmatic table of the transitive verb in the present tense:

[^11]$k \cdot i n$, to see.
Indicative; Present Tense.

| Object | Subject, Singular |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st person | 2nd person | 3rd person |
| Singular, 1st person |  | dè da k - $\mathrm{i}^{\prime}$ ñga | dè la $k$-iñga deñ la k-i'ñga |
| ". 2 2nd ${ }^{\prime}$ | $\left\{\begin{array}{c}\text { dEñ tl kinga } \\ 1 \text { tla } \mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{ing} g a \\ \text { and }\end{array}\right\}$ | la da - $\mathrm{i}^{\text {'ñga }}$ | deñ la k'nga |
| Plural, ${ }^{\text {1st }}$ | \{tal ${ }^{\text {k }}$ - inga \} | êtl da $k \cdot i ' n ̃ g a ~$ | êtl la k-i'ñga |
| ", $\begin{aligned} & \text { 2nd } \\ & \text { 3rd }\end{aligned}$ | dāleñ tl k'iña la tl k'iñrōga | la da ki'iñöga | dale'ñ la kri'ñga |


| Object | Sulject, Plural |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st person | 2nd person | 3rd person |
|  | d'aleñ deñ k-i'ñga le deñ k•i'ñga daleñ deñ k-i'ñga le deñ k:i'ñrơga | dè dāleñ $k \cdot i$ 'ñga <br> la dāleñ ki'ñga ētl daleñ $\mathbf{k} \cdot$ i'ñga $^{\prime}$ <br> la daleñ $\bar{k} \cdot i^{\prime}$ ñrōga | dē la ki'inrrōga deñ la k-i'ñroga ētl la k-i'ñröga daleñ la k'i'ñrōga |

Note.-It seems that in the first person plural the transitive pronoun d'al. $\varepsilon^{\prime} \tilde{n}$ is contracted. It is remarkable that the characteristic suffix of the third person plural $-r \overline{0}$ is also used when the object is in the third person plural. When the object is a substantive it is placed before the subject :

$$
\therefore \quad \dot{t c} \bar{\imath}^{\prime} n \bar{o} t l t_{\bar{u}} \bar{u}^{\prime} g a, \text { I eat salmon. }
$$

It will be seen that the suffixes of the transitive verb are the same as those of the intransitive, with the sole exception of the second persons, where the termination -gen is missing. This, however, is also frequently the case in intransitive verbs.

Note.-While in the great majority of cases the verb is inflected, as indicated above, I found a considerable number of instances in which the terminal -ga was missing; for instance, tla gata' and tla gata'ga, I eat; tla g $\bar{u} d E^{\prime} \tilde{n}$, I hear. In other cases I found the terminal sfollable -gen instead of ga; "out I was not able to detert. any rule regarding their use.
tla gatü'ñ $\bar{e}^{\prime}$ sEn $n$ tla gata', I eat and eat again.
tla gude'
tla skuñgude'̃̃geñ. I smell.
tha $k \cdot i \tilde{n} g E n$, I see it (something inanimate).
Note.-There are a few instances in which the pronoun, second person singalar, seems to be $t l \tilde{\pi}$ or tla $\tilde{n}$ :

> da tln kringa, I see you.
tcīn tla tlañra ta! eat your salmon!
tlñra $n u^{\prime} g a i$, your house.
Note.-Sometimes the syllable $g y \bar{z}$ is added to the first person without changing the meaning :
gy/̄ dē stütl yūa'ngang, I should like much.


- $\quad 7 y \bar{\imath}$ dē $k \cdot{ }^{\prime} a \bar{e}$ 'skidǘganē ! I forgot!
hal dē gyī sqū'nai i'sta! give me a knife!
It may be that it is an interjection similar to 'oh!' (Latin utinam!)


## Interrogative.

The interrogative is expressed by the particle $g u a$, which is placed after the subject, object, or adverb, as the case may be.

## Intransitive Verb.

## Present Tensc.



## Imperfect.

dée gua st'é'ga? and déc gua st'éegō'odja? was I sick ?

## Transitive Verb.

dē gua da $k \cdot i n$ ? do you see me? ètl gua $k \cdot i \tilde{n}$ ? do you see us? la gua da k•in? do you see him? la gua da k•iñō? do you see them? da gua dakin? do you see it?
In the interrogative the subject frequently precedes the object :
$d \bar{u}$ gua qa $d \bar{u}^{\prime} r a$ ? have you got a dog?
When there is an adrerb accompanying the verb the former takes the interrogative particle:

> dan'rgatlgua dEn st'ègo'odja? were you sick yesterday?
> a la $\bar{e}^{\prime}$ tsisgua da kiñ? do you see them there?

It may also be attached to both object and adverb:
tlgaigua nū'ra da kin? do you see my land?
ratcgua gyina $\bar{e}^{\prime} t$ sisgua da $k \cdot i \tilde{n}^{?}$ do you see anything there (at a distance)?
Sentences beginning with interrogative words do not take this particle, and have instead of the verbal suffix $-g a, g E \tilde{n}$ :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& g y \bar{i}^{\prime} s t \overline{0} s t^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} g E \tilde{n} \text { ? who is sick? } \\
& g y \bar{z}^{\prime} s t \bar{u} \bar{e} t s_{E \pi} \text { ? who is there? } \\
& \text { gy } \bar{i}^{\prime} s t \bar{o} n \bar{u}^{\prime} \text { rao } \bar{e}^{\prime} t s e n \bar{n} \text { ? whose house is that? } \\
& g_{\bar{o}}{ }^{\prime} s u d a t \bar{a}^{\prime} g_{E} \tilde{n} \text { ? what are you eating? } \\
& 4 \quad g^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} \text { su va } \bar{e}^{\prime} t s E \pi \bar{n} \text { ? what is that? } \\
& g^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} g u s g \cdot a n \overline{0} d a \kappa^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} g E \tilde{n} \text { ? why do you laugh ? } \\
& \boldsymbol{g} \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime} t l e n t l \bar{u}^{\prime} \bar{o} g E m \bar{d} \bar{e} d a k \cdot i \tilde{n} g e n \tilde{n} \bar{o}^{\prime} o d j a \text { ? why did not you see me? } \\
& k \cdot a s u^{\prime} \tilde{n g} u \text { deñ } k \cdot \bar{e}^{\prime} t E \tilde{n} \text { ? how are you? } \\
& d_{E} \tilde{n} \text { gyj } \bar{u}^{\prime} r a \text { n } \bar{u}^{\prime} g a i \text { gua } \bar{e} t s \text { ? is that your house? } \\
& d_{E} \tilde{n} \ddot{g} y \bar{u}^{\prime} r a \text { lü'nagai gua } \bar{e} t s ~ T l k \bar{u}^{\prime} g i l t a ? ~ i s ~ T l k \cdot a g i l t ~ y o u r ~ t o w n ? ~
\end{aligned}
$$

## Imperative.

The second person singular is formed by the separable particle tla, which is affixed either to the verb or to its object, or precedes the verb. In the plural the suffix -ro is added to the stem of the verb :


In transitive verbs which have an object tla is always placed after the object:
$\vec{d} \bar{c}$ tla kin! look at me! la tlakiñ! look at him!
$\bar{u}^{\prime} g E n$ tla kin! look at yourself!
Plural, 1st person : $d^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} l_{E} \tilde{n} g a t \bar{a} s^{\prime} a \tilde{n}$ ! let us eat 1
A periphrastic form is frequently used:
hala'!ga ta! come! eat!
hala! dē étlna! come! help me!
hala! gandl dē qotl da! come ! make me drink water! (let me drink!)
hala! d'aleñ qotl s'añ! come! let us, drink!
The following forms seem to indicate that there is still another method of forming the imperative :

> ni'ra i'sta! give me mire !

## Infinitive.

I found two infinitives, one ending in - $(g) a i$, the other in $-g \cdot a n$.
gem tl k'ag.ai dziñra'nga, I laugh almost (I am not far from laughing).
 I should dance.
$d_{E \tilde{n}} k \cdot c \bar{u} \prime \tilde{n} g a i ~ g y \bar{e} d \bar{e}$ statl yūa'ngen, I should like much to see you.
sqala'ng.an dé $u^{\prime} n s e \bar{e} t y \bar{u} \cdot a n g a$, I understand well to sing.
rū'ritltag an lu' nsē $d a$, he knows to fight.
Note. - I give the following conditional sentences without an attempt at explana tion:
$l$ (1) $s t^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} \dot{g}_{F s}$ (2) raígañ (3) $g_{E m}$ (4) $t l$ (5) käitlra'nga (6), if (3) he (1) is
sick (2), I (5) not (4) shall go (6).
$d \bar{e}$ (1) $k \cdot u^{\prime} \tilde{n} r a$ (2) gEnn (3) g'ötutl (4) gFin gyan (5) ria'tlrasga (6), if (5) my (1) father (2) not (3) dead (4), I shall dance (6).
$d \bar{e}$ (1) $k \cdot u^{\prime} \tilde{\pi} r a$ (2) $g \bar{\sigma} \in u t l$ (3) gyan (4) gEm (5) $t l$ (6) niatlrū'nsga (1), if (4) my (1) father (2) dead (3), I (6) shall not (5) dance (7).
$l$ (1) $s t \bar{c}^{\prime} g \bar{e}$ (2) $g^{\bar{n}^{\prime} u s t l \bar{o}}$ (3) $l_{u}^{\prime} r a$ (4) tl (5) k $\bar{a}^{\prime}$ itsgīga (6), if not (3) he (1) were sick (2), I (5) should go (6) to him (4).
 not (3) he (1) were sick (2), I (6) should go (7) with you (4) to him (5).
$d \bar{e}$ (1) k'u' $\tilde{r} r a$ (2) g'ōtulai (3) $g \bar{a}^{\prime} u s t l \bar{o}$ (4) $t l$ (5) riatltlñ̄ū $\bar{u}^{\prime} \bar{a}$ (6), if not (4) $m y(1)$ father (2) dead (3), I (5) should dance (6).

## Negative.

The negative is formed by $g E m$, not, while the suffix -ran is added to the stem of the verb:
gem dē st'écranga, I am not sick.
gemb la tl kriñranrïga, I do not see them.
gem na és $t l k \cdot i n ̃ r a n g a$, I do not see a house there.
In the interrocrative-negative the interrogative particle is attached to the negation; the suffix of the verb is -ran.
gem gua l st'é'ran? is he not sick?
gem gua nra nī èts da kंiñrañ? don't you see that house there?
Here is a negative imperative:
gem tü'ranga! don't eat !

## Derivatives.

-gēi, repeatedly:
$d \bar{e} s t^{\prime} \bar{e}-g e^{-} i g a, ~ I ~ a m ~ r e p e a t e d l y ~ s i c k . ~$
$-g \bar{\imath}(g E \tilde{n})$, he is in the habit of:
$l$ k'a-gàg genga, he laughs always:
$l r \bar{u}^{\prime}$ Hitilta- $g^{\bar{z}^{\prime}} g E n \tilde{n} \dot{a}$, he is in the habit of fighting.
tla gatagī'ga, I eat always.
-gil ( $g E \tilde{n}$ ) gītlen, it is beginning, growing to be :
$d \bar{e} s t^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime}-g i t l_{E} \tilde{n} g a, ~ I ~ a m ~ g e t t i n g ~ w o r s e . ~ . ~$
sEn-gitleñga, dawn, it becomes daylight.
skuiga-gi'lgsn, it is high water.
g'äisgō-gi'lga, it is growing round.
$t^{\prime} a t s e \bar{e} i^{\prime} l g a$, the wind is increasing in strength.
gyiñ, to cause :
gyina (1) $t l$ (2) $t \vec{u}^{\prime} g e n ~(3) ~ d \bar{e}$ (4) $g y i n \quad$ (5) $s t^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} g a$ (6), I (2) ate (3) sometbing (1) (that) makes (5) me (4) sick (6).
There are several derivatives the meaning of which I do not know :

$$
\begin{aligned}
& t l \text { ta-nī'ga, I eat. } \\
& \text { ag alqua, it begins to be night. } \\
& \left.\vec{k} \cdot e \tilde{u}^{\prime} n g a, \text { to see (from } k i \pi\right) \text { ). }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Verbum Substantivum.

$\bar{e} t s$, there, and its derivations frequently stand for the rerbum substantivum, as will be seen from the following examples. In such cases a terminal $-\bar{o}$ is generally added to the subject:

> tlk' $\bar{u}^{\prime}-\bar{u} \bar{e}^{\prime} t s i$, it is a rock, these are rocks.
> gat-ō'tsi, it is a deer.
> th $\bar{u}-\bar{o} \overline{e^{\prime}} t s i$, it is I .
> du gua $\bar{e} t s ?$ is that you?
> gy/a'grn tleai-o $\bar{e}{ }^{\prime}$ tsi, it is my canoe.
> Qu' $\bar{e} d e s$ tlgai'ra- $\bar{o}^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} t s i$, it is the country of the Haida. nū्̄ंncts nū'rau- $\bar{e} \bar{e}^{\prime} t s i$, it is his house.
> la gy $\bar{a}^{\prime} r a-\overline{0} \bar{e}^{\prime} t s r \bar{u} g a$, it is theirs.
> gem gya'gen étsranga, it is not mine.
> gem gya'gen nü'gai $\bar{e}^{\prime} t s r a n g a$, it is not my house.

## The Adverb.

It seems that adverbs are placed either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence :
dü'rgatl dē da kiñgena, I saw you vesterday.
$k^{\prime} o a^{\prime} \bar{e}$ lǜ'ra $^{\prime}$ tlgai ta k:ingasañ, you will see my land later on.

tha l keca'̃̈gen sqoū'ntsE
dārgatl $\overline{\text { onsñ }}$ ètl da kiñrasga, you will see us again to-morrow.

Note.-In a number of instances I found the verbal affixes $-g a$ and $-g F \tilde{\pi}$ not attached to the verb, but to the adverb, so that the latter would appear to be the inflected verb, if it were not for the fact that the pronoun precedes the verb. All the examples I collected refer to the adverb $y \bar{u}^{\prime} a n$, much, very.

$\bar{e} t l$ gyitina skēl $y \bar{x}^{\prime}$ enga, we belong to the eagle gens. dé ran na kioan y $\bar{u}^{\prime} E \tilde{n} g a$, I have many houses.


## FORMATION OF WORDS.

It was mentioned above that compound words occur very frequently, and it seems probable that by far the greater number of words are compounds of monosyllabic stems. In many cases I am unable to ascertain the meaning of the elements of words, although the fact that they are compounds cannot be doubted.
st'a k-a ran, plant of foot (perhaps : foot inside above).
sl k:a ran, palm of hand. $\quad k \cdot \bar{o}^{\prime} y \bar{c}$ lea ran, sky above. $k \cdot u l \bar{o} k \cdot a$ ran, knee pan. na k:a ran, roof = house above.


```
gy'atl (1) kol (2) da'ñgō (3), knee joint [(leg (1) joint (2) ? (3)].
```

$k^{\prime} \cdot \bar{o} t s g \cdot a^{\prime} \hat{n} g \overline{0}$, post supporting roof.
$\boldsymbol{h}^{\imath}$ ta $g \cdot a^{\prime} \bar{n} g \bar{v}$, rattle ( $h i$ probably arm).
gyā'rañ, to stand. $k \cdot \bar{u}^{\prime} r a n ̃$, to walk.
rä $i t l t a$, to fight.
$k^{\prime} \mathbf{v}^{\prime} t l t a$, to steal. qoü'tlta, to boil.
The word $k \cdot u^{\prime} t s \bar{s}$, head, appears in compounds generally in the form $k \cdot \bar{u} s$. $k \cdot u ̄ s k \cdot e^{\prime} t=l$, head hair.
$k \cdot \bar{u} s k u^{\prime} t s \bar{e}$, head bone, skull.
The words denoting the activity of senses are evidently derived from the names of the respective organs:
gyū, ear.
qañ, eye.
kun, nose.
Also: gūdeñ, mind.
guids' $\tilde{n}, '$ to hear.
$k \cdot i \tilde{n}$, to see (I was frequently doubtful whether to write $k \cdot i \tilde{n}$ or $q i \pi$, but preferred the former, as I found it more frequently the most adequate spelling than $q i n$ ).
$s k u^{\prime} n g u d E \tilde{n},{ }^{1}$ to smell.
$g \bar{u} d E \bar{n}$, to think.

In the word 'to smell' we find an initial 8 , which seems to occur rather often. There are some indications that it is interchangeable with $t l$.
$s k \cdot a ̄ t l$ and $t l k \cdot a ̄ t l$, black.
$k \cdot a s^{\prime} E^{\prime} n t s E \tilde{n}$ and $k \cdot a t l E^{\prime} n t s E \tilde{n}$, brain.
sqe $\bar{t}$ and $q \bar{t} t$, fire.

Finally I give a collection of sentences illustrating various peculiarities of the language:
$n_{E n} k^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} l g \cdot a d \bar{u}^{\prime} a$, be is a white man.
$d E n t l k \cdot i \tilde{n} g E n ~ n E n ~ k^{\prime} E l g \cdot \bar{u}^{\prime} d a s$, I see you are a white man.
tla neñ dü'raga, I have one.
$d \bar{e}$ ran na $k$ ooan y $\bar{u}^{\prime} s \tilde{n g a}$, I have many houses.
( $\bar{u} t l r a n$ ) na thē $i$ stīn $t l d \bar{u}^{\prime} r a g a$, I have two houses.
rat' $E l s k \bar{o} \lg a$, there are many peoplet
tlgán $k \cdot a$ tl $i^{\prime} s g \cdot a s g a$, I shall go to my country.
dē atgua da i'sqas? do you go with me?
squn qaulE' $n$ lē̈ist la $g \cdot \bar{o}^{\prime} g a n e \bar{e}$, I give one to each.
$l$ sk:al gyidü'ga, his shoulder is tattooed.
dengua gin qu'étran? what is your people?
tlī'o tl g'ötlra'ganē, I have made it myself.
$d \bar{e} g \bar{u} d E^{\prime} \tilde{n} g a i$ st'è y $\bar{u}^{\prime} a n, ~ I ~ a m$ downcast $=m y$ beart is very sick.
$d_{E} \tilde{n}$ gua $g y \bar{u} q \bar{e} ' l$ ? have you a perforation of your ear?
$t l g \bar{u}^{\prime} d e n ~ s t l \bar{o} d \bar{e} s t \bar{t}^{\prime} ' g a$, I think I am sick.
$d \bar{e} n a k \cdot t l k \cdot \hat{v} t l t u u^{\prime} \bar{e} a^{\prime} g a n \bar{e}$, somebody has stolen mine (this form seems to serve for the passive).
$d \bar{u} g \cdot \tilde{u} t l r a n ~ a g e n ~ s t \bar{e} d a$, you make yourself sick.
$a^{\prime} l d \bar{e} g i$ sqū'nai ista! give me a knife!
haldigi nü'ra sqa'nai digi i'sta! give me my knife !
hala dé'itk•a $k \cdot{ }^{\prime} \cdot \bar{\prime} i t!$ come along with me!
gyi'stō tlrutlrü'ean? who made that?
$g \bar{o} t^{\prime} E l s k \bar{o} l y \bar{u}^{\prime} a n$, there are many people.

## III. Tsimshian.

Obtained from a native of Meqtlak qā'tla, 'Matthias'; a native of Ft. Simpson, Mrs. Lawson ; and from Mrs. Morrison, a half-blood Tsimshian from Meqtlak $q q^{\bar{a}} \mathrm{tla}$, the interpreter of the Bishop of Caledonia.

## PHONETICS.

Vonels:

$$
\text { a, } \hat{a}, \mathrm{e}, \mathrm{E}, \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{o} \text { u. }
$$

Consonants: b, p; w; m; gy, ky; g, k; g. k' $\mathrm{r}, \mathrm{q} ; \mathrm{h} ; \mathrm{d}, \mathrm{t} ; \mathrm{n}$; $\mathrm{ds}, \mathrm{ts} ; \mathrm{s} ; \mathrm{l}, \mathrm{tl} ; \mathrm{y}$.
$A$ is never pure, but pronounced between $a$ and $\ddot{a}$. Long vowels are by many individuals still further lengthened by repeated intonation; for instance. $\bar{i}^{\prime} t$ and $i \bar{u}^{\prime} o t, \operatorname{man} ; t s^{\prime} \bar{e} n$ and $t s^{\prime} \bar{e}^{\prime} e n$, to enter. I have preferred to retain the repeated vowels, except where I was sure that the repetition is only an individual peculiarity. The distinction of surds and sonants is clear, but terminal surds are throughout transformed into sonants whenever a vowel follows. Ds and ts, however, when followed by an hiatus, are very mach alike. $S$ is not the English $s$, but has a slight touch of

[^12]$s h$, the point of the tongue not quite touching the teeth. $L$ is pronounced, the tip of the tongue touching the upper teeth, the back being pressed against the palate., $N$ is similar to $d n$, the nose being almost closed.
all sounds occur as initial sounds. I found the following combinations of consonants beginning words:

| pt | kw | qp | nd | toy | sp | tlp |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| pts | kt | qk | nts | tk; tkw | sky | tlg |
| ptl | ktg | qt; qtk | nl | tk. | sk | tlk |
|  | ks; ksp, ksk, kstq |  |  |  | sg |  |
|  |  | qts; qtsky |  | tq. | sk- |  |
|  |  | qs; qsk, qst |  |  | sq srl |  |
|  |  |  |  |  | st |  |
|  |  | qtl |  |  | stz |  |

The following consonants occur as terminal sounds:

$$
\mathrm{p}, \mathrm{~m}, \mathrm{ky}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{k}, \mathrm{r}, \mathrm{q}, \mathrm{t}, \mathrm{n}, \mathrm{~s}, \mathrm{l}, \mathrm{tl}
$$

Terminal combinations of consonants are:

| 1 p lky | pk | tk $;$ ntk | pq | pt | ps | qtl; mqtl |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  |  | tsk* | mq | k't; lk't | ms | ntl |
|  | tk; ntk, ltk | mk | tq ; ltq |  | ks; lks, tlks | tstl |
|  | sk; ksk, nsk, tsk |  | nq | st; lkst, mst | $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{s}$ |  |
|  | ${ }_{\text {lk }}$; mtlk |  | sq | nt | qs; pqs |  |
|  | tlk; mtlk |  | 19 | it | ns |  |

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

PLURAL.
Nouns and verbs form the plural in the same way. Therefore I shall treat this subject before discussing the parts of speech separately.

There is a great variety of plural forms; I observed the following classes :

1. Singular and plural have the same form:
```
bear, ol.
cat, to'us (Chinook).
deer, wan.
seal, re'la.
cedar, g'Elä'r.
arrơn, hāuwã'l.
day, ca.
year, k'âtl.
fathom, ga`'it.
blanket, guc.
to hear, nEqEno'.
to see, nē.
```

It seems that all quadrupeds, the dog excepted, belong to this class; also divisions of time and measures.
2. The plural is formed by repetition of the whole word:

| dog, has-hashā's. | good, ām-amā'm. |
| :---: | :---: |
| foot, si-si'si. | to carve, gyetlk-gyetlgyetlk |
| stone, lâp--leplâ'p. | to cut, g'ots--g.'asg'ots. |
| ee, $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{an}-\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{ank} \cdot \mathrm{an}$. | to make, ds'ap-ds'apds'ap. |
| ks-akEa'ks. | to strike, d'o'oc-d'上cdooc. |

It would probably be more proper to join this class to the next:
3. The plural is formed by reduplication.
branch, anē'ic-ananē'ic.
ghost, bä'laq-bilbā̀laq.
hat, k-ā'it-k'ak $\cdot{ }^{\prime}$ 'it.
scar, tlē'eky-tlētlē'eky.
spruce, se'men-sEmse'men.
inside, ds'ăr-ds'eds'a'r.
sick, si'epk-sipsi'epk.
to finish, g'àodē-grag áodè.
to know, wulà'-wulwulà'.
to look, nē'etsk-neknē'etsk.
to miss, guā'adEc-gutguà'adEc.
to pursue, loyā'ek-lolīyā'ek.
to speak, a'lgiaq-ala'lgiaq.
to gire, gyEnā'm-gyEngenà'm.
4. The plural is formed by diæresis:
to hang, yaq-yā'iaq. to leare the house, kser-ksiâq.
5. The plural is formed by the prefix $l u\left(l_{i}\right)$ :
hungry, k'tē-luk'tē. ............ to laugh, cic'ā'qs-licaā'qs.
to be afraid, bāc-lebāc. to sleep, qstoq--laqsta'iq.
to drink, aks-laa'ks. . to walk on a road, yäk-liyā'k.
6. The plural is formed by the prefix $k \cdot a$ :
canoe, qsâ'o-k.aqsâ'o. to dress up, nó'otk-k anó'otk.
face, ts'al-k'ats'Elts'a'l.
tired, cōnā'tl-k'acōnā'tl.
7. The plaral is formed by the prefix $h \bar{u}$ :
house, wālp-huwā'lp.
8. Singular and plural are derived from the same stem partly by epenthesis ; but no rule of formation is evident.

```
company, nā'tatl-natatltatl (this may round, tlkwia'tlk-tlkwi'yitlyatlk.
    be a distributive).
man, iơ'ot-iō'ota.
raren, k`āq-k a'rat.
woman, havä'aq-hanä'naq.
to call, hō'otk-hukho'otk.
to scream, aya'wa-ayaluwa'da.
to natch, loma'kca-lŏhaya'kca.
to fall down, k āina-lē'ina.
```

9. Singular and plural are derived from different stems :
child, tlkuâ'melk'-k'apEtgErE'tlk.
large, wi-wu'd’a. separate, leks-hagul. to come from, wātk'-amiā'an.
to cry, wīhā'ut (= large say)-bîk.
to die, ds'ak'-dEr.
to eat, yā'wiqk - tqâ'oqk.
to enter, ts'e'en-lamts'aq.
to kill, ds'ak'-yets.
to lie (recline), nâk-lātlk.
to run, ba-otl.
to sit, d'a-wan.
to stand, hā'yetk-maqsk.
to take, ga-doqtga.

It seems that in compound words only one part of the word takes the plural form :

> island, leks d'a = separate sitting-lEks hūwa'n.
> river, g.alā'aks = ascending water-g.'alā'akaks.
> stranger, leksgyat = separate people-hagulegyat.
> tonn, k'alts'a'p-k'’alts'apts'a'p.
> glad, lo āmak'â'ot = in good heart-lo amā'mk'ak'â'ot.

## THE NOUN.

There is no grammatical gender, and apparently no oblique case. Possessive relation is either expressed by simply co-ordinating nouns or by the particle Em :

> the chief's (1) house (2), wälp (2) sEm'â'yit (1).
the raven's (1) master (2), miā'n (2) k'àq (1).
But a rhite man's (1) canoe (2), qsâ'e (2) Em k'amksi'oa (1).

> thie door (1) of the house (2), leksâ'q (1) Em wā'lbEt (2).

As will be seen, the nominative always precedes the genitive. In a few cases I found $n E$ prefixed to the possessed object or to the part:

> the man's (1) canoe (2), ne qsâ'e (2) ióota (1).
> the dng's (1) tail (2), nE ts'ou'be (2) has (1).

When the possessor is a person whose name is given, the possessed object takes a terminal $s$ :

George's (1) canoe (2), qsầes Dords (see p. 91).
All other relations are expressed by prepositions, which take a terminal $s$ when referring to a nomen proprium (see p. 91).

## Tenses.

When the object spoken of belongs to the past, that is, if it has perished, or has been destroyed or lost, the noun is used in the past tense, which is formed by the suffix -dEE.

> the dead man, $\mathrm{i} 0^{\prime} \mathrm{OEE}=$ the man that was.
> the broken canoe, $\mathrm{qs} \mathrm{a}^{\prime} \mathrm{dEE}=$ the canoc that was.

When the object belongs to the future, the noun is used in the future tense, which is formed by the prefix $d \mathrm{Em}$ :

> the future husband, dem naks. the canoe that rill be made, dEm qsà'E.

This prefix is the same as the characteristic of the future of the verb.
In continuous speech presence and absence are also distinguished, the former being expressed by the suffix $-t$, the latter by $-g a$.

## THE ADJECTIVE AND ADVERB.

The adjective precedes the noun, and is generally joined to it by Em :

> young man, sóp'as Em io'ot.
married man, naks Em iō'ot. old man, wud'ä'gyat Em io'ot (= great person man). bad man, hada'q Em iō'ot. good man, ām Em iơ'ot.
In some instances $a$ stands instead of Em :
good man, ām a iō'ot.
Rat:
bad man, hada'q a io ot, is obsolete.
Certain adjectives immediately precede the noun:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { barge, wi: } \\
& \text { very, important, semral. }
\end{aligned}
$$

A number of adjectives are abbreviated in forming compounds :
rery, semral, abbreviated, sEm: semhala'it, the important dance. good for nothing, k•amste, abbreriated, k•am: k•amwālp, a miscrable house.
The abbreviations cannot be used at pleasure.
K-amste walp and k"am walp, miserable house, are equally correct; but, while we have atlge semá'm, not very nice, SEma'm would not be correct; it must be semral ăm, rery nice.

Note.-The meaning differs sometimes, according to whether em is used or. omitted; for instance :
wihā'u, to cry ; from wi, great, and hāu, to say.
But: WI Em hāu, to xcold.

Comparison.
I give only a few examples of comparatives:
John is taller than George, k'ā wile'eks de John test Dsords. John is smaller than George, k'ā tsō'oske John test Dsords. that is the heariest, p'a'lek's gua' $\mathrm{a}=$ that is heavy.

## NUMERALS.

The Tsimshian has seven sets of cardinal numbers, which are used for various classes of objects that are counted. The first set is used in counting when there is no definite object referred to ; the second class is used for counting flat objects and animals; the third for counting round objects and divisions of time; the fourth for counting men; the fifth for counting long objects, the numerals being composed with -kan, tree; the sixth for counting canoes; and the seventh for measures. The last seem to be composeil with anio'n, hand.

| No. | Counting | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Flat } \\ & \text { Objects } \end{aligned}$ | Rourd Oojects | Men | Long Objects | Canoes | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | grāk ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | gàk ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | g'E'rEl | k ${ }^{\text {al }}$ |  | k'amä'ct | k'al |
| 2 | t'Epqait | t'Epqai't | gó'upel | t'Epqadà | g'à'opsk'an | g'alpex'eltk | gi'lbel |
| 3 | gua'nt | gua'nt | gutle' | gula' ${ }^{\text {l }}$ | q a'ltsk-an | graltsk-a'utk | gulėont |
| 4 | tqâpq | tqālpq | tqajpp | tqälpqdà | tqajapsk'an | $\mathrm{tq}_{\text {a }}^{\text {alp }}$ disk | tqalpqaionnt |
| 5 | kctonc | kctōnc | kctong | kcenkcal | $k \cdot$ 'Etö' $E n t s k \cdot a n$ | kctōonok | kctōnsilo'nt |
| 6 | k -alt | k - alt | k-alt | $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{alda}{ }^{\prime} 1$ | $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{a}$ 'olt-k'an | $\mathrm{k} \cdot \stackrel{\text { alth }}{ }$ | k'¢ ${ }^{\text {a }}$ 'dElo'nt |
| 8 |  | t'Epqȧ'lt | t'epraít | t'Epqaldat | $t$ tepqaltak-an | t'Epqialt | t'E; ¢a aldelo'ut |
| 8 | guandàlt | yuktajlt | yuktà 1 t | yuktlêadà 1 | ëk'tlaEdsk'an | ruktà'th | yuktildiflo'nt |
| 9 10 | kctemà'c | kctema'c | kctemà'c | kctemacà'l | kctemà'etsk'an | kctemà'ck | kctpmàsulo'nt |
| 110 | gy'ap | gy'ap | $k^{\text {c }}$ ¢ ${ }^{\prime}$ el | $\mathrm{k}^{\prime} \mathrm{pal}$ | k'pe'etsk'an | gy'apok | k'péo'nt |
| 11 | gyan ${ }^{\text {c }}$ |  |  | $\mathrm{k}^{\text {¢ ¢ a al }}$ tE k'à |  |  |  |
| 12 | $\mathrm{t}^{\text {trpaja }}$ | - |  | k'pal te t'Epqa | a'l - | - | - |
| 20 | kyede'el |  |  | kyedầ' | - |  |  |
| 30 | gulé $\times$ ulayap |  | - | gulà'legyitk | - | - |  |
| 40 | $\left\{\begin{array}{l}\text { t'Epqadà'lgy } \\ \text { tqālpqwulg }\end{array}\right.$ |  |  | 二 |  |  |  |
| 50 | kctōncwudgy |  |  | - | - |  |  |
| 100 200 | kcenecál |  | - | - | - | - |  |
| 200 300 | ${ }^{\text {k }}$ pal |  |  | - |  |  |  |
| 300 400 | $\mathrm{k}^{\text {coal }}$ te kcen | Ecál | - | = | - | - |  |
| 500 | kyedail te k | Enecal |  | - |  |  |  |
| 600 700 | gulàlegyitk |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 700 800 | gulàlegyitk | te kcenecal | - | - |  |  |  |
| 800 900 | tqaipqta'1Eg | itk itg kcen | necâ\} |  | - |  |  |
| 1,000 | k'pal | - | - | - | - | - | - |

It, will be seen at once that this system is quinary-vigesimal. It seems doubtful whether $t q \bar{u} l p q$, four, is derived from the same root as $t^{\prime} E p q \bar{u} t t$, two. In five we find the word for 'hand,' ano' $n$, in compounds on (?). Six and seven are evidently the second one and two. In twenty we find the word gyat, man. The hundreds are identical with the numerals used in counting men, and here the quinary-vigesimal system is most evident.

## Ordinal Numbers.

The first has two forms, one for animate, the other for inanimate objects. The following ordinal numbers are formed by means of naanki $\tilde{u}^{\prime}$, 'the next to,' and the preceding cardinal numeral, except in the case of the second, when the 'next to the first' is used. The terminal $t$ which is here attached to the cardinal numbers is probably nothing else than the terminal euphonic $t$ spoken of above.

|  | Animate | Inanimate |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| The first: | ksk ${ }^{\text {a }}$ 'oq | kstso'q |
| The second: |  | naanhiä' kstso'q |

The third:

| Counting | Flat Objects | Round Objects | Men | Long Objects | Canoes | Measures |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { naanhiā' } \mathrm{q} \bar{a}^{\prime} \mathrm{CEt} \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} \text { naanhiā' t'Ep- } \\ \text { qā̃'dEt } \end{gathered}$ | naanhiä'gō'upElt | $\begin{gathered} \text { naanhiä }{ }^{\prime} \text { t'ep- } \\ \text { qadalt } \end{gathered}$ | 'naanhiá <br> g'âopsk'anget | naanhiá g'alpe'eltk | $\begin{aligned} & \text { naanhia' } \\ & \text { gu'lbelt } \end{aligned}$ |

## Numeral Adverbs.

once, $\mathrm{g}^{\prime} \mathrm{E}^{\prime} \mathrm{rel}$.
four times, tqālpq.
trice, gō'upel.
five times, kctonc.
three times, gutle'
It will be seen that they are identical with the forms used for enumerating round objects.

## Distributive.

The distributive numerals are formed by $m \mathrm{E} t \mathrm{l} \mathrm{E}$, followed by the cardinal numeral for instance, one (round) to each : metle g'e'rel.

PRONOUN.
Personal Pronoun.

| I, ne'rio |  | $I$ (present), (n)-ס, I (absent),--e |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| thou, ne'ren | thee, gua n ) | thoul (mE),-En |
| he, she (present), nē'edet $\qquad$ (absent), nē'etga | $\begin{aligned} & \text { him, her (present),-一 } \\ & \text { (absent),-- } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { he, she (present),-Et } \\ & \text { (absent),-Etga, Ega } \end{aligned}$ |
| $w e, ~ \mathrm{nE}$ 'rem | us, g'Em |  |
|  | (to) you, guā'sEm | you, -Ensem |
| they (present), depnē'edet <br> --(absent), dEp nē'etga | $\begin{aligned} & \text { them (prosent), - } \\ & \text { (absent), } \end{aligned}$ | they (present),-Et <br> - (absent), Etga, Ega |

The independent pronoun, the third person excepted, is formed from the stem ner-, the origin of which is unknown to me.

## Possessive Pronoun.

The independent form of the possessive pronoun is identical with the nominative of the personal pronoun : mine, ne'riō, \&c.

The dependent possessive pronoun is affixed to the noun to which it belongs. There are distinct forms for the object being present or absent, and three tenses, past, present, and future. There is no difference between the possessive form of the noun and the intransitive verb, and it seems to the writer that according to the logical form of the Tsimshian language both must be considered identical. For this reason it seems possible that the form neriō (I and mine) is formed from the rerbum substantivum $n \bar{e}$ and the pronominal suffix. The temporal prefixes and the forms for presence and absence are also identical with those of the verb. The third person plural is omitted, being identical with the singular. Further remarks on these suffixes will be found on p. 88.

|  |  | ast | Pre | sent | Fut |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Present | Absent | Present | Absent | Present | Absent |
| 1st person singular | ne | nE-èdaè | -ō | -Ēga ${ }_{\text {and }}$ | dem-0 | dEm-ēdaẽ |
| 2nd ", | n -En | n-Endāē | - FN | -Enga | dem-mn | dem-Enga |
| present, singular | $\mathrm{n}-\mathrm{Ft}$ | n-Etga | $\begin{aligned} & \text { —Et } \\ & \text {-daa } \end{aligned}$ | -Etga | dem-Ftdem-das | $\begin{aligned} & \text { dem-Etga } \\ & \mathrm{dEm}-\mathrm{ga} \end{aligned}$ |
| 3rd " absent, " | n -da | n-ga |  | -ga |  |  |
| 1st :" plural. . | n-Em | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{n}-\text { Emda } \\ & \mathrm{n}-\text { sEmda } \end{aligned}$ | - Em | -Emga | $\begin{aligned} & \text { dem-Em } \\ & \text { dEm-sEm } \end{aligned}$ | dem-ga |
| 2nd " " . | n -sEm |  |  | -semga |  | dem-Emga |

## Demonstrative Pronoun.

Presence and absence may best be treated under this heading, as they correspond 1o a certain extent to our 'this' and 'that.' Absence is designated by the suffixes - ya and $-d a(a)$, presence by $-t$. I do not know whether there is any difference hetween the two forms of absence. In continuous speech presence and absence are a ways expressed by $-g a$ and $-t$.

Besides these suffixes, we find the particles (or pronouns), - asg $a=$ being absent, $-a=$ being present, frequently used. The suffix -ga is used instead of the imperfect tense, the absence indicating, at the same time, that the action or event belonged to the past. The suffix is always attached to the word the presence or absence of which is to be stated :
$n$ neguu'ts Dsordst, the (present) George's father.
$n E g u u^{\prime} t s ~ D$ sordsdaa, the (absent) George's father.

The demonstrative pronouns are formed by means of the same suffixes:
this, guē'Et and guā'a. that, gua'sga.

In sentences our demonstrative pronoun is frequently expressed by the corresponding verbal form :
this man is good, åm io'odet.
that man is good, ảm at io'odetga.'

Demonstrative adverbs are : here, gué' f ; there, ya'gua.
the book here, sāwuns gue'e.
It seems that these suffixes are also attached to words:
your ckildren here, tlguEnē'E.
Some prepositions have separate forms for presence and absence :

$$
a t, \text { to, present-da. . at, to, absent-ga, gasga. }
$$

## THE VERB.

## The Intransitive Verb.

## Present tense.

|  |  | Singular. | Plural. |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st person: |  | ( $n$ )- $\overline{\boldsymbol{o}}$. | (dep)-Em. |
| 2nd |  | ( $m E$ )-En | (mesem)-Ensem. |
| 3rd " | present : | -Et (Et) | $(d E p)-E t(E t)$. |
| 3rd | absent: | -Etga, ega | (dep)-Etga, ega |

The prefixes placed in parentheses are not always used, but seem to serve merely for the purpose of giving greater clearness or emphasis to the sentence.

The imperfect tense is formed by the prefix $n_{E}$-, the future by $d_{E m-}$. It seems that in the imperfect the personal prefixes are almost always used. They are contracted with the temporal character.

| , | Imperfect tense |  | Future tense |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | Singular | Plural | Singular - | Plural |
| 1st person | nan-oi | nap-mm | dem (n)-ō | dEm (dEp)-Em |
| 2nd " . . | nem-EN | namsem-Ensem | dem (mE)-En | dem (mesem)-Ensem |
| 3rd " present | ne-Et | nap-Et, or $\mathrm{nE}-\mathrm{Et}$ | dEm-Et | dEm (dEp)-Et |
| 3rd " absent. | ne-Ega | nap-Ega, or $\mathrm{nE}-\mathrm{Ega}$ | dem-Ega | dem (dEp)-Ega |

The perfect is formed by tla preceding the present- tense, the plusquamperfectum and futurum exactum by the characteristic particles of these tenses preceding the perfect.
he has been sick, tla si'epget. he had been sick, na tla si'èpget. he will have been sick, dEm tla si'ēpgEt.

## Interrogative.

1st person
2nd "

> Singular. -Enanē $\operatorname{mE}^{2}-E n \bar{e}^{\prime}$ $-\bar{e}$

Plural.
2nd "
-enamé. —esemè. - $\bar{P}$.

## Negative.

| 1st person singular, atlge-ē. |  |  |  | 1st person plural, atlge_myn |  |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 2nd | " | " | atlge-En. | 2nd | , |  | $\operatorname{atlg} E-\cos =1 . n$ |
| 3rd | " | " | $\operatorname{atlge-Et}$. | 3rd | " | " | atlge-Et. |

Note.-Nouns and adjectives with the everbum substantixum are inflected in the same way as the rerbum intransitivum. If the noun is accompanied by an adjective, the former is inflected:

I am a Tsimshiañ, Ts'Emsiano'.
I am a good woman, ama' hanā'ranó. you are Tsimshian, Ts'Emsiā'nsEm. are you a Tsimshian? Ts'EmsianEné' ?

The third person is frequently expressed by adding the demonstrative pronoun:
they are' Tsimshian, Ts'Emsian dEp gua'sga.'

Verbum Transitivum.


It will be seen that the object generally appears as the suffix of the verb. This makes the inflexion very much like that of the possessive pronoun, and it must probably be understood in the same way as the possessive pronoun; for instance, I see you = I your seeing. In accordance with this fact-that the object appears as th: suffix of the verb-is the other: that when the object is in the plural the verb has the plural form, while it has the singular form when the subject is in the p!ural: I k:won you, nwulwulà'sem ; you knon me, mesem wulā'yó.

The tenses are formed in the same way as those of the intransitive verb.
interrogative. , t

| Object | Singular |  | Plural |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 2nd Person | 3rd Person | 2nd Person | 3rd Person |
| 1st person singular | me-owee | t-owé ${ }^{\text {c }}$ | mesem-owè | t-owè |
| 2nd " | $\cdots$ | t-Enē |  | t-Enè |
| 3rd " ${ }^{\text {r }}$ | -Enē | -Edè | -EsEmė | -Edè |
| 1st, " plural | me-Emē | t-Emē | mEsEm-Emē | t-Emē |
| 2nd " |  | t-semē |  | t--sEmē |
| 3rd " | ---Enē | -rdē | - EsEmē | -Edē |

the interrogative there is no distinction of presence and absence.
Negative.
atlge—.

| Object | Singular |  |  | Plural |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | 1st Person | 2nd Person | 3rd Person | 1st Person | 2nd Person |
| 1st person, singular | ... | me-è | t -è |  | mesem-ē |
| 2nd " " | $n-\operatorname{m}$ |  | t -En | dep-En |  |
| 3rd " " | n -t | me-t | $\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{t}$ | dEp-t | mesem-t |
| 1st " plural | ... | $\mathrm{mE}-\mathrm{Em}$ | $t-\mathrm{Em}$ |  | mESEm-Em |
| 2nd ", | n -sEm | ... | t-sEm | depo-sem | - ... |

Imperative.
I have not reached a satisfactory understanding of the formation of the imperative. The following examples show that the indicative is frequently used for expressing an order:

Singular: eat! yà'wiqgen! = thou art eating! drink! a'ksEn! = thou art drinking! sit donn! d'ān! = thnu sitst donn!

Plural: eat! yà'wiqsem! drink! laa'ksesem! sit dorn!' wa'usem!

In other cases I found the infinitive (stem) of the verb used as in imperative form :
sit dorn! d'a!
rarm the water! sE gya'muk aks!
come in! ts'ē'en!
Another imperative is formed with the suffix - $t l$ : -
eat it ! gāptl!- look at him! nē'etl!

## take it from me! dē watktl â gâ'i !

The imperative first person plural is formed in various ways:

> let us sit domen ! k-altse wa'nEm !
> let us look at him! sōntse dEp néest !
> let"us go up the "̈rer wa'tse dep nē'est !

The imperative negative is formed with gyilâ'dse! do not!
Note 1.-It will be noted that in the negative and interrogative the first person singular ends in $\bar{e}$, while in the indicative it ends in $\bar{\sigma}$. In the former case the person is evidently considered absent.

- Note 2.-The first person singular has frequently, instead of $-\overline{0}$, the suffix -En $\overline{0}$. In transitive verbs -En $\overline{0}$ is used when there is no definite object; for instance, I strike it, tō'uskenut; but: I strike my breast, tō'usō $k \cdot \bar{a}^{\prime} y e g \cdot \bar{o}$. In the case of intransitive verbs I am unable to give any rule. The use of $-\mathrm{En} \overline{\bar{o}}$ or $-\bar{\sigma}$ depends upon the adverb accompanying the verb. It may be that whenever the state expressed by the verb is defined $-\bar{u}$ is used.

I am sick, si'ēpgenō.
I am tired, sona'tleno.
I am hungry, k'tē'Enō.
I am asleep, qstâ'qEnō.

I an alrays sick, tlā'wōla si'èpgō.
I am again tired, tlagyik sonā'tlo.
I am alnays hungry, tlā'wòla k'tē'yo.
I rant to sleep, hasā'ran dEm qstầqo.

Note 3.-When the word terminates with a vowel, $y$ is inserted between the end of the stem and $-\bar{o}$ of the first person singular. The same is done in the case of the first person of the possessive pronoun :
$I$ knon, wulā'yo. I use it, hâ'ynt. miy mother, nâ'yó.
Frequently a $k$ is found inserted. I am not able to explain its use.

## Participle.

It seems that the present participle is formed by reduplication:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { to speak, e'lgyaq. } & \text { spcaking, EE'lgyaq. } \\
\text { to sew, tlöopk. } & \text { sening, tltlō'(pk. } \\
\text { to eat, yā'wiqk: } & \text { cating, hēya'wiqk. }
\end{array}
$$

The past participle is formed by the suffix $-d \bar{e}$ (see passive).

- to sleep, qstâq. haring slept, qstâqdē.
having walked, iā'dē.
to walk, ia.
haring said, hā'udè.
The verbal substantive is formed by $d E i^{\prime} n$, and might be more properly classified as a relative sentence:
the naker, na dei'n ts'a'pdet = who is he who made it?
I do not know whether there is any difference between this form, referring to a special case, and the general verbal substantive, but it seems to be used also in a general sense :
$n a d E i^{\prime} n t s^{\prime} a^{\prime} p a q s \hat{a}^{\prime} \mathrm{E}$, who is the maker of the canoe?


## Passive.

It seems that the passive is somewhat irregular. It terminates generally in $-k$, joined to the stem by $s$ or $t$.
to use, hâ.
to sec, nè.
to burn, mãlq.
to pay, qtkâ.
to pulh, sā'ik.
to send, hā'yets.
to hurt, sg•a'yigs.
to make, tșap.
to prepare, guldem $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{a}^{\prime}$ wun.
to knor, wala'.
to smoothen, tle'lep.
There are a number of other forms:
to kill, ts'ak.
to hate, lebä'leqs.
to do, wāl.
to say, hãu.
used, há'rek
seen, nē'esk.
burnt, malg'esk.
paid, qtikik.
pulled, sa'isk.
scnt, hä'yetsk.
hurt, sg-a'yiksk.
made, ts'apsk.
prepared, guldem $k$-a'wuntk.
knern, walà'itk.
smoothened, tlebi'esk.
killed, tsäksa
katce, lebā'leqdē.
done, wäldè.
said, hā'udè.

From these passive forms a present, past, future, \&c. are formed in the same way as from the stem.

## Derivatives.

1. Causative, formed by -ER and ran:

I cause him to make, ts'a'p'Enūt.
to cause to drink, aksen
to cause to stop $=$ to hinder, gyila' En.
$I$ hinder you to drink, gyila'Enठ a'ksen.
$I$ cause him to cat, sāwir'anōt.
it causes him to do, ranwàldet.
2. Inchoative, formed by reduplication :

3. Imitative, formed by sis- and by reduplication combined :

Ifeign to be sick, sissisi'epkeno. Ifeign to be hungry, siskuk'tē'Egeno. I feign to be tired, sissisönā'tlgenō.

Ifcign to sleep, sisqaqsta'qsEno.
4. Usitative, expressing something habitual, also anything serious, a necessity, formed by r'ap:

> I ám sick a long rhile, rap si'epkeno.
> Iam in the habit of eating, ràp ya'wiqgeno.
> I must sleep, r'ap qstà'qEno.
> I am repeatedly (alnays) hungry, r'ap tlā'wola k'té'só.

Frequentative, formed by huk:
he comes repeatedly, huk ka'edekset. he is repeatedly sick, hak si'ëpgEt.
Quotatire, formed by $k \cdot a$, which is derived from anakk ad, hearsay :
it is said that he is coming, k'â' EdEksk:a.
Dubitative, formed by sEEn, following the personal suffix:

> maybe he is sick, siē'pgEsEEn.
> maybe you see me, mEnē'etsésEEn.

The first person singular has in this derivative alwars the absent form in - $\bar{e}$.
Reflexire.-Although the reflexive is not a real derivative, I mas add here that it is formed by lep gyi'leks = self back; for instance :

I strike myself, lep gri'leks t'ó'uskeno.
NoTE.-There are a number of interrogative forms in $t l$ which I cannot explain :
is that mine? neriotl (na) wā'lde ?
is that his? gua'sgatl (na) wa'lde?
rill he not come? a'yentl dem kea'edeksde?
din't you sec him? á'yentl menē'etsde ? rho said it? nātl hā'ude? (probably = whosc saying ?) wherc is he who made it? (he absent), ndatl na dEi'n ts'a'pdeda?
(he present), nda na dei'n ts'a'pdeda?
when did he arriere? ndatl da batsgededa?
rhen will he arrire? ndatl dem da batsgededa?
when did you arrire ' nda da batsgen?
when will you arrire? nda dem da batsgen?
$" \quad \because \quad$ tsedenda dem da batsgen?
rhose nouse is it ? nātl wālbe guā'a ?
I add a few sentences that will be found of interest from a syntactic point of view:

I shall cause you not to come, ātlgen dem $k \cdot \hat{a}$ 'edeksent.
maybe he is not coming, à'yensentl dem $\mathbf{k} \cdot \hat{a}^{\prime}$ edekst.
do you hear that he is not coming? nEqno'sentl dem wa k'a'edeksde?
I hear he is sick, n $\mathrm{Eq} \mathrm{EnO}^{\prime}$ 'yó siē'pgetge.
he says he (another man) is sick, ma'tldede si'ēpgedet.
$I$ hope it will be good neather, nesentl amtl laqa'.
$I$ hope he is not sick, nesentl wa si'epgede.
I rish to drink, sà'rau dem a'kso.
$I$ order him to come, guna'y $\bar{\prime} \delta$ dem $\mathrm{k} \cdot \hat{a}^{\prime}$ EdEksEt $=I$ order his future coming.
$I$ see you are cating, né'etso wul yā'niqk• $\mathrm{En}=\mathrm{I}$ see where you eat.
it is mine, nē'et nE'rio.
it is Gcorge, nēnē'es Dsords.
$I$ might fall down, $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{a}^{\prime}$ 'inané gyè'en.
you might fall donn, $\mathrm{k} \cdot \overline{\mathrm{a}}$ 'inaEn gyè'en.
if I fall, I shall hurt myself, tsEda sak-ä'inaē, dem sg-a'iksg Eno.
if I had fallen, I should have hurt myself, amé'en ise sak'a'inaē nản den sg.ä’iksgeno.
1 give the knife to you, gyena'mo hatlebi'etsgeda guan.
Note.-Every word referring to a person, more especially to a nomen proprium, takes the suffix -s:

George's canoe, qsâi'es Dsords.
George and John, Dsords dis Dsōn (in other cases: ditl).

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

It may be well to call attention to a few of the formative elements and to the manner of composing words. One of the most remarkable features of the Tsimshian vocabulary is the indiscriminate use of words fur nouns and verbs but still more that of words as prepositions and verbs. Among these we note:
wätk, from and to come.
$g a$, at and to take.
ksáq, out and to leave the house.
$d a$, with, at and to elope, to take with.
$t s^{\circ} \varepsilon^{\prime} l_{E m}$, into and to put into.
We may say in a general way that the prenositions serve at the same time as verbs expressing a motion or location corresponding to the preposition.

Among formative elements of words we note the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& a m \text {, used for: } \quad a m h a l{ }^{\prime} \text { 'it, headdress = used in dance. } \\
& \boldsymbol{w i} \text {, large: } \quad \text { wīhüld } E \text {, many; rud'sgyat, old = great people. } \\
& \text { wīhüut, to cry. } \\
& n u ̄ n l \bar{u} \prime \circ t l k \text {, without nest (a name). } \\
& \text { nüksenä'tlk, without breath (a name). } \\
& n \bar{u} \bar{k}^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} u t s, \text { without labret }=\text { girl } . \\
& \boldsymbol{r} \bar{v}, \text { without: } \\
& \text { wōk }{ }^{\prime} \bar{a}^{\prime} u t s, \text { without labret }=\text { girl } .
\end{aligned}
$$

$k$-, place of, only occurring in geographical names :
$\operatorname{Laq}(1)-k(2)-\operatorname{tlg} u a(3)-r a l i a^{\prime} m s(4)=$ on (1) where (2) little (3) haws
(4) ; an island near Fort Simpson.

KEnE(1)-k(2)-qále $\bar{e}(3)=$ place (1) where (2) scalps (3).

Meqtla(1)-k(2)-qi'tla(3) = narrow channel (1) where (2) sea (3). $\operatorname{Laq}(1)-k(2)-k i n(3)=0$ (1) where (2) (Gyit)lan (3); village of the Gyitlan.
$K_{E} E n E-$, place of :
$K_{z}^{\prime} n E(1)-k(2)-q \hat{a}^{\prime} l \bar{e}(3)=$ place (1) where (2) scalps (3).
$K_{E} \cdot n E(1) \cdot k \cdot a n u^{\prime \prime} \bar{o}(2)=$ place of (1) trade (2).
(kun-, place of, Gyitksan dialect.)
kxpe-, place where something is frequently done:
Kspe(1)-k•amé'elkq(2) = where always (1) good for nothing say (2) = playground.
Kispes(1)-小' $\bar{u}(2)=$ where one always (1) sits (2).
Kispe (1)-sünt (2) $=$ where always (1) in summer (2).
$k \cdot a m-$ miserable, good for nothing, from k-amtse:
$k \cdot a m e^{\prime} e l e q=$ good for nothing to speak $=$ to play.
$k \cdot a n-$, instrument:
$k \cdot a n n a^{\prime} i$, rowlock $=$ rowing instrument.
$k \cdot a n t l \bar{u}$ 'opes, thimble $=$ sewing instrument.
$q \cdot$ to eat, to receive:
$q p \overline{i a n} \tilde{0}$, to smoke = to eat smoke.
qgyat, man-eater.
qana'è, bread-eater.
$q \bar{\omega} a n^{\prime} o^{\prime} n$, to receive payment for burial ( $\bar{J}$, into ; $a n^{\prime} o^{\prime} n$, hand).
$q-k a$, misfortune happening:
$q h a s{ }^{\prime}{ }^{\prime} e p k a$, having sickness.
nulaqtlâotk, when a landslide went down.
$q p \bar{\imath}-$, half, in part, from $q p_{\bar{\imath}}^{\bar{\imath}} \bar{e}^{\prime}$ :
$q p^{\boldsymbol{i} m a ̂}{ }^{\prime} k$, partially white.
$h a-$, instrument (cf. $h \hat{a}$, to use) :
haaks, cup, spoon = drinking instrument.
haa'lagyaq, windpipe = speaking instrument.
hayü'wiqk, fork = eating instrument.
had' ${ }^{\prime}$ 'osk, broom $=$ sweeping instrument.
ha-, causative:
hasi'epk, causing sickness.
halemütk, causing salvation, saviour (Olachen).
ts'em-, in :
$t s^{\prime} \mathrm{Em} a \mathrm{ks},=$ in water, a sea monster.
ts'em ts'aq = in nose, nostril. ${ }^{\text {. }}$
ts'Em En'o' $n=$ in hand, palm of hand.
थsē-, future:
$t s e \bar{e} d \mathrm{E}^{\prime} n d a$, when ? (future)
tsëgyētsē'ip, to-morrow.
se-, to make:
sE wulä'isk= to make relative, to adopt.
sE $n u l u^{\prime}=$ to make know, to teach.
wul-, where something is done (only once, not habitually):
rul (1) gyileks (2) tqal (3) d'amtk (4) = where (1) self (2) on (3) written (4); a place on Nass River.
$n d \boldsymbol{r}$-, place where something is kept:
ndesu'ga, sugar-bowl.

I add translations of a few names :
Geographical names:
Laq (1) - $k$ (2)-spaqtl (3), Aberdeen $=$ on (1) where (2) catch salmon (3).
Gyat (1) la'q (2) $q$ (3) tsáoks (4) = People on eat canoe-boards = people of village where they steal canoe-boards (ktsa'oks).
Gyat (1) Kisia'n (2) = people (1) of the Ksian (2) (Skeena).
Kisian, probably from alks mian $=$ the main river.
Ts'Emsiä' $n=$ on the Ksian.
Names of persons:
Na (1) gun (2) aks (3), what (1) mistaken for (2) water (3).
Tagg $\cdot a$ (1) $d \bar{i}$ (2) lâ'v (3), across the water (1) also (2) staying (3)
Tseren (1) síg gyisk (2), ashore (1) pulling (2)
$T s^{\prime}$ ens ${ }^{\prime} a^{\prime} e k$, the one left alone.
$T s^{\prime} s b a^{\prime} s a$, either overcast sky = close eye sky, or fastened talon (of eagle).
Wiha', great wind.
Nēbat, making noise to each other.
Ndsécts le'itlks, grandmother of watching.
Nís $n i b a ' s k$, grandfather great storm.
Hats'eqsné'eq, dreadful fire.
Dem di máksk, going to be white.
Nés yului'ops, grandfather carrying stones.
Lī d'am lay t'u' $\overline{0}$, sitting on ice.
Sco'pgyibä'yuk, flying in front of town early in morning.
Saraitk $\cdot$ ak $\cdot a^{\prime}$ 'i, eagle having one coloured wing.
$Q \bar{i}^{\prime} y e l_{k} k$, contracted from qpī'litl hag'ulī'oq = partly hairy sea-monster.
Hok qsūn ram Neqnoq = unbeliever in Neqnoq.
I cannot satisfactorily explain the formation of the last five names.

## IV. Kctonáqa. PHONETICS.

Vorels: a, e, $\mathrm{E}, \mathrm{i}, \mathrm{o}, \mathrm{u}$; au.
Cimsonants :-p; m, w; d, t; n; g, k; g. $\mathrm{k} \cdot \mathrm{m}-\mathrm{q}, \mathrm{h} ; \mathrm{s}, \mathrm{ts} ;-\mathrm{tl} ; \mathrm{y}$.

- Initial and terminal combinations of consonants are very scarce. Among my collection of words only a few initial, and no terminal combinations are found. The former are : $k t, s k, s k$, $\boldsymbol{q}_{\ell}, \mathrm{T} k g, t s p, t!k, t \ln$. As all words are undoubtedly compounds, numerous combinations occur in words, one consonant being the terminal sound of one part of the word, the other the initial sound of the sub equent part.


## GRAMMATICAL NOTES.

## THE NOUN.

Singular and plural have no separate forms. There are no cases. The genitive is frequentls expressed by the possessive pronoun. k'atlaqu'atsin aqkthímis, the horse's head.

In such cases in which we use the indefinite article the suffix -näm, designating somebody's or some, is attached to the noun.

> aqk'uni'näm, a tooth, somebody's tooth.
> aqgitla'nām, a house.
> aqk'atluma'nūm, a mouth.

A great number of nouns have the prefix aq- or begin with compounds of this prefix and certain others. I am unable to explain the meaning of this prefix, which does not form an integral part of the word, being dropped in certain syntactic forms. aqgitla, the house (stem : tla).
inika gitla, it is my house.
san tlani'mene, there is a house. aqkinmi'tuk, river:
*inn mitu'ken $\bar{e}$, there is a river.

## THE ADJECTIVE

The adjective precedes the noun.
PRONOUN.
Personal Pronous.

we, kamina'tla. you, ninkū'nisgìtl. they, ninkō'isis.

## Possessive Pronotn.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { my, ka- } \\
& \text { thy, -nis. } \\
& \text { his, -is. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { our, ka-na'tla. } \\
& \text { your, —ni'ggitl. } \\
& \text { their, -isis. }
\end{aligned}
$$

The independent form of the possessive pronoun is identical with the personal pronoun:

P', $\boldsymbol{o}^{\prime} k n{ }^{\top}$.
2, üs.
3, $g \cdot a^{\prime} t l s a$.
4, qui'tsa.
5, $\boldsymbol{i} \bar{\epsilon}^{\prime} h k J$.
6, nmi'sa.
7, nsta'tlū.
8, ò uqü'tsa.

$$
k i^{\prime} \min , \text { it is mine. }
$$

NUMERALS.
Cardinals.

16, ét $^{\prime} t \overline{\text { ön }} \boldsymbol{z}$.
20, ai'rō.
30. g'atlsa'n̄̄nō.

100, gyit'un̄̄’̄̄̄rod.
200, às tlet'unǜnūno.
300, g'atlsa tlet'urṓnōn $\delta$.
1,000, gyi't'onē tlet'unō'nōnō.

In some cases I found the prefix $g a$ - added to the numerals orpe and two:
$g^{\prime} \bar{o}^{\prime} k n \bar{c}$ aqktsemú'kinik, one man.
$g^{\prime} \bar{o}^{\prime} k r e \bar{e} n i^{\prime} t l g \overline{0}$, one dollar.
g'ó'kne $a^{\prime} q t h a t$, one fathom.
$g^{\prime} \bar{o}^{\prime} k n \bar{e}$ natū'nik, one month.
gia'sē natü'nik, two months.
The following is remarkable:
$\tilde{u}^{\prime} s n \bar{e} q \bar{u}^{\prime} a t l t s i n$, two dogs.
Ordinals.
the first, $o^{\prime}$ smēt.
the second, as the third, $g \cdot a^{\prime} t l s a$; s.c.

Numeral Adverbs.
once $\overline{v k k} \cdot e n a^{\prime} . \quad$ twice, $a^{\prime}$ 'sk' atl. three times, $g \cdot a^{\prime}$ tlsak $\cdot$ 'atl.
the first time, o'pāk. the second time, ask'astl; \&c.

## Partitives.

one-half, ās tlsekose'ka.
one-third, ga'tlsa tlsEkose'ka.
THE VERB.
The Intransitive Verb.
Indicatire.

|  | Present tense | Imperfect tense | Future tense |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1st pers. sing. | ku-nè | mā-ku-nē | ku-tsqatl-né'nē |
| 2nd | gin-ne | mà-gin-nē | gin-tsqatl-né'nē |
| 3rd " ${ }^{\text {ra }}$ | i-nē | mä $(\mathrm{k})$-nē | (9)-tsqatl-nē'nē |
| 1st " plur. | ku-natla (anè) | mã-ku-natla (anē) | ku-tsqatl-ratla(anē) |
| 2nd " " | gin-ni'gitl | mà-gin-nígitl | gin-tsqatl-ni'gitl(nē) |
| 3 rd " | -nenā'menē | mà(k)-nenā'mené | (i)-tsqatl-nenà'menee |

The intransitive verb may also be inflected by means of an auxiliary verb $i$, as follows:

1st pers. sing. $\quad \begin{gathered}\text { Present tense } \\ \text { kuinè-nē }\end{gathered}$

> Imperfect tense mã-kuinē-nē
> \&c. \&c. sc.

Future temse

## ku-tsqatl-inénē-nē.

The attributive verb is formed in the same way, or by means of the anxiliary rerb $i$ :

The noun does not take the rerbal suffixes and prefires, but is used with the auxiliary verb :

> gin ine Kutona'qa, you are a Kootonay.
> $k^{\prime} \cdot a^{\prime} p \bar{e}$ ine Kutona'ga, they are all Kootonay.
> iné kagitla, it is my house.

Imperatire.
2nd person singular: -ēn; for instance: $\bar{z}^{\prime} k \bar{c} n$, eat ! $g^{\prime} \delta^{\prime} m \bar{e} n(\bar{e})$, sleep : 2nd ", plural: -ētl; ", i'kētl, eat!

## Interrogatite.

The interrogative particle is $k \cdot a n$ or naqk-an, which, howerer, is not ased when it is self-evident that a question is meant :

```
naqk\cdotan gin-g'就menē ? and gin g'o'menē ? are you asleep ?
naqk}\mathrm{ an gin inē Kutona'qa? and gin inē Kutona'qa? are you a Kootonay?
k\cdotan inē ka'min? is it mine?
k\cdotan ine\overline{eqqgitlu'is ? is that his house?}
```

After an interrogative pronoun the particle is omitted:

$$
\text { g.atla } k \bar{i}^{\prime} \bar{e} ? \text { who is that ? }
$$

## Negative.

The negative is formed by the prefix $k \cdot{ }^{\prime} a$, which follows the pronominal prefix :
$k u-k \cdot a$-santlqü'onē, I am not sick ( = bad body).

## ITERATIVE.

The iterative is formed by tla, which follows the pronominal prefix:

## Optative.

The optative is formed by a compound particle, composed of the particles designating future and past. It is, therefore, a futurum exactum.
trqe-ma kui'kenē, I should like to drink.
The future is also used to express a desiderative.

Quotative and Responsive.
If the verb is said in answer to a question, or in repetition of a sentence heard from another speaker, the prefix slu is used.

[^13]- Transitive Verb.

Indicatice, Present Tense.


The third persons plural and singular are identical.
For instance, from $n u-k \cdot \bar{e}$, to conquer:
kunuk'ōni'scmē, I conquer thee.
kunnuki:ōnk̄̈'is, I conquer him.
nuk'öni'pené, he conquers me.
nukinni'sené, he conquers thee.

Passive.
ku k'antla'tltitl, I am struck. George nu-k\%o-a'thē, George has been beaten. $k u-k \cdot \overline{0} \cdot a t l, \mathrm{I}$ am beaten.

## FORMATION OF WORDS.

I have not succeeded in analysing many words, but a number of prefixes and suffixes have resulted from my comparisons. Among the words of the vocabulary I collected, 164 begin with the prefix aq above referred to. Besides this I found a number of other prefixes.
gia-, animal:

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { gia'kqī, fish. } & \text { gianuqtlū'mena, rabbit. } \\
\text { giak'anu }{ }^{\prime} k o a t, \text { eagle. } & \text { giantli'kq̄̄, ground hog. } \\
\text { gia'k' }{ }^{\prime} \text {,tla, duck. } & \text { giaū'ats, fool hen. }
\end{array}
$$

gianu'kqū, mountain-goat.
$n u$-, another prefix of animal names:
$n u k \cdot t s a^{\prime} k \cdot t l \bar{e}$, humming-bird.
nuk'tlu'k•oèn, loon.
nutlaketli'tlik., hawk.
Here may also belong :
gia-nu'k.q $\bar{q}$, mountain-goat.
gia-nuqtlu'mena, rabbit.
nutlqamiü'at, snail.
nutlö'k•at, the white tail deer. nutltō'kup, antelope.
giantlikqö, ground hog.
$g u$-, separable prefix. Meaning unknown.
gu-mi'tlk $\cdot a$, large. gu-ranak anánäm, war.
gu-atla'skin, to break off.

$$
g u-m a t l u k \cdot u k \cdot u^{\prime} k \cdot u t \text {, rain. }
$$

$-k \cdot a$, opening of :
aqkiasatli'gak, opening of nose $=$ nostril.
aqk'atle' ma, npening of œsophagus = mouth.
aqk'atlaqāu' Eit , opening of house $=$ door.
-k.ak-, central part, dividing line:

> aqk•i'nek•ak, notch of arrow.
> aqkink:aksi'tla, septum.

## ) ON the north-western tribes of canada.

-gak suffix occurring in names of many parts of body :
àqka-sathi'gak, nostril.
aqguni'tegīk, breast.
aqgë̀ 'igak, foot.
$a_{q} k \cdot \bar{o} \dot{z} i g a k$, wrist.
aqg'oatg'atliga'k, esebrow.
-nük, tree:
katlia' $n \overline{i n k}$, thorn.
sk'immo'mīk, sarvis (?) berry bush.

- aqk $\quad$ nuä'rōk, willow.
-tlqd, body :
sïn, bad.
sïke, good.
$\star \cdot a$, broad.
-mōtl, instrument:
yīrakī'umètl, brush.
itli'nmētl, instrument.
$k s a \bar{\sigma}^{\prime} m \bar{\partial} t l$, net $=$ dipping instrument.
gümitlühenä̀kṑmōtl, sling.
$-k i n$, to do something with hand or foot:
yi'makin, to paint.
aqtss'kin, to crush with foot.
yü'tsikin, to stand on top of something.
g-asni'nkin, to break.
-qan, to do something with teeth:
$g u g \cdot a^{\prime} s q a n$, to bite off a piece.
$-q \overline{0}$, to do something by hammering :
( $g^{\prime}$ ) $a^{\prime} k t{ }^{\prime} q^{\bar{\sigma}}$, to pound.
guatla'sqi, to break off with hammer.
-mik, vibrate :
atlask:a'mik, a cut.
[A comparative rocabulary of all the languages of British Columbia, including the principal dialects, will be given in a future report.]


## desciription of plates.

Plate I., Fig. 1. Tsimshian, male, circ. 55 sears [col. Boas, No. 8.)]. Nirm", frontalis.
, Fig. 2. Tsimshian, circ. 50 years. [Morton collection in the Muscum of the Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, No. 213.] Nirma frontalis.
Plate II., Fig. 1. Tsimshian. [Morton collection in the Muscum of the Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, No. 214.] Norma frontalis.
" Fig. 2. Tsimshian, circ. 18 years. [Morton collection in the Museum of the Academy of Natural sciences, Philadelphia, No. 987.] Norma frontalis.
Plate III., Fig. 1. Same as Plate I., Fig. 1. Norima latiralis.
Fig. 2. Same as Plate I., Fig. 2. Jimma latrralix.
Plate"IV., Fig. 1. Same as Plate II., Fig. 1. Norma luteralis.
Fig. 2. Same as Plate II., Fig. 2. Norma lateralis.
Plate" V., Fig. 1. Same as Plate I., Fig. b. Norma rerticalis.
Plate" VI., Fig. 2. Same as Plate I., Fig. 2. Nome as Plate II., Fig. 1. Norma rerticalis.
" Fig. 2. Same as Plate II., Fig: 2. Norma rerticalis

Plate I.-Tsimbilan, I.; II.


Fig. 1.-Half natural size. $\delta$


Fig. 2.-Half natural size.

Plato II.-Tsimshian, III., IV.


Fig. 1.-Half natural size.


Fig. 2,-Half naturai sizo.

Plate III.-Tsimshian, I., II.


Fig. 1.-Half natural size. ${ }^{*}$


Fig. 2.-Half natural size.

Plate IV.-Tsimshian, III., IV.


Fig. 1. -Half natural size.


Fig. 2.-Half natural size.


Fig. 1.-Half natural size. $ठ$


Fig. 2.-Half natural size.

Plate VI.-TSIMSHIAN, III. IV.


Fig. 1.-Half natural size.


Fig. 2.-Half natural size.
> $=$

> SFOTTISTOODE AND CO. NET-STREET EQTARE levons



[^0]:    ' 'In the long and narrow section of this continent, included-between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific, and extending from the country of the Eskimo on the north to the Californian Reninsula on the south, there are found perhaps a greater number of tribes speaking distinct languages than in any other territory of the same size in the world. Not only do these tribes differ in their idioms, but also in personal appearance, character, and usages.'-United States Exploring Empedition under Charles Wilkes, vol. vii. 'Ethnography and Philology:' by Horatio Hale; 1846; p. 197.
    ${ }^{2}$ 'It [the map] brings out in a most striking way the singular linguistic diversity which obtains along the west line of this part of America-a fact for which it is indeed difficult to offer a reasonable explanation, knowing as we do how essentially maritime the coast tribes are in their habits, and how skilled and fearless they are in the management of their excellent canoes. The anomaly appears still greater when we contrast the several clearly defined colonies of the coast with the wide sweep of the languages of the interior of the Province, where from the generally rugged and often densely wooded character of the country, and the tarbulent nature of the rivers, intercommonication must have been by comparison extremely difficalt.'-Dr. George M. Daroson: Preface to ‘Comparative Vocabularies of the Indian Tribes of British Columbia; with a Mapillustrating Distribution;' by Drs. Tolsie and Dawson, 1884, p. 7.

[^1]:    ${ }^{1}$ New observations made in 1889 seem to indicate that there exists an affinity between the fourth and fifth groups.

[^2]:    ${ }^{1}$ Height of face, 116.

[^3]:    ${ }^{1}$ Vertex 25 mm . behind bregma.
    2124 Sut. nas. front. to bregma, 222 Lambda, 248 interparietal sut.

[^4]:    ${ }^{1}$ See 'The Houses of the Kwåkintl Indians, British Columbia,' Proc. U.S. National M!sрии, 1888, pp. 197-213.

[^5]:    1\% What

[^6]:    ${ }^{1}: h$ of the Kaigani dialect stands for $q$ of the other dialects. It is an $k$ preceded by a slight intonation.

[^7]:    ${ }^{1}$ It conveys the secrets of the winter dance (see p. 53).

[^8]:    ${ }^{1}$ See the author's paper on 'The use of masks on the North-West Coast of America,' in Internationales Archir für Ethnographie, 1888.

[^9]:    $y \bar{c} q$ sine $\bar{e}$ I have done it.
    Jolin y $\bar{c} s^{\prime} a k \cdot k u$ wat, John is tall (John is bone-long).
    $y_{\bar{c}} q a t$ s'ak. kue natl, I am small (I am bone-short).
    $y^{\text {' }} q^{a t} k u$ tla', I am stout.

[^10]:    gyīstō nā rā̃ $\bar{e}^{\prime} t s E n \bar{n}$, whose house is that?
    $\bar{u}^{\prime} n e t s n \bar{u}^{\prime} r a \bar{u} \bar{e}^{\prime} t s i$, it is his house.
    rastlda kunrao $\bar{e} t$ tsi, that is their father.

[^11]:    ${ }^{2}$ I found the following doubtful future : 1 stērañ $k \cdot a c a ̄ \neq r a g a$, he is going to be sick.

[^12]:    ${ }^{3}$ The following forms are remarkable:
    $d_{E} \tilde{n}$ gua gyū$q \bar{e} \prime l$ ? don't you hear?
    deñ gua kunqé'l? don't you smell it?
    Also: तa gú gyūds' $\tilde{n}$ ?
    

[^13]:    sl $\alpha$-natlenketlatlö'nū, somebody said it is snowing.
    $k u-s l u-m a^{\prime} q \bar{e}$, I am coming (said in reply to a question).
    slu-i'kene, they say that he eats.

